|    |                         |   | 832 |
|----|-------------------------|---|-----|
| 1  | UNITED STA<br>FASTERN D | TES DISTRICT COURT<br>DISTRICT OF TEXAS |     |
| 2  | LUFK                    | (IN DIVISION                            |     |
| 3  | ANASCAPE, LTD.          | DOCKET 9:06CV158                        |     |
| 4  |                         | <br>  MAY 8, 2008                       |     |
| 5  | VS.                     | 8:45 A.M.                               |     |
| 6  | MICROSOFT CORP FT AL    |   |     |
| 7  |                         |   |     |
| 8  | VOLUME 4 OF             | PAGES 832 THROUGH 1065                  |     |
| 9  | REPORTER'S TRA          | ANSCRIPT OF JURY TRIAL                  |     |
| 10 | BEFORE TH               | IE HON RON CLARK                        |     |
| 11 | UNITED STATES DI        | STRICT JUDGE, AND A JURY                |     |
| 12 |                         |   |     |
| 13 | APPEARANCES             |   |     |
| 14 |                         | LIGLAS A CAWLEY                         |     |
| 15 | AN                      | THONY M. GARZA                          |     |
| 16 | ST<br>ST                | EVEN CALLAHAN                           |     |
| 17 | MC<br>30                | KOOL SMITH - DALLAS                     |     |
| 18 | SU                      | ITE 1200                                |     |
| 19 |                         | DEDT M DADKED                           |     |
| 20 | RO                      | BERT CHRISTOPHER BUNT                   |     |
| 21 | 10<br>10                | O E. FERGUSON                           |     |
| 22 | TY                      | LER, TEXAS 75702                        |     |
| 23 | SA                      | MUEL FRANKLIN BAXTER                    |     |
| 24 | 10<br>10                | 4 E. HOUSTON STREET, SUITE 3            | 00  |
| 25 | PO<br>MA                | RSHALL, TEXAS 75671                     |     |
|    |                         |   |     |

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

833

.

| 1  | 1 FOR THE DEFENDANT NINTENDO OF AMERICA | A:                |
|----|---|-------------------|
| 2  | 2 ROBERT J. GUNT                        | HER, JR.          |
| 3  | 3 399 PARK AVENU<br>NEW YORK, NEW       | E<br>YORK 10022   |
| 4  | 4<br>LAWRENCE LOUIS                     | GERMER            |
| 5  | 5 CHARLES W. GOE<br>GERMER GERTZ        | HRINGER, JR.      |
| 6  | 6 550 FANNIN<br>SUITE 500               |                   |
| 7  | 7 BEAUMONT, TEXA                        | S 77701           |
| 8  | 8 JAMES S. BLANK<br>LATHAM & WATKI      | NS                |
| 9  | NEW YORK, NEW                           | VORK 10022        |
| 10 | JOSEPH S. PRES                          | ТА                |
| 11 | 11 ROBERT W. FART<br>NIXON & VANDER     | S<br>HYE          |
| 12 | 12 901 N. GLEBE R<br>11TH FLOOR         | OAD               |
| 13 | 13 ARLINGTON, VIR                       | GINIA 22203       |
| 14 | 14                                      |                   |
| 15 | 15<br>COURT REPORTER CHRISTINA I B      | ICKHAM CRR RMR    |
| 16 | 16 FEDERAL OFFICI                       | AL REPORTER       |
| 17 | 17 BEAUMONT, TEXA                       | S 77701           |
| 18 | 18                                      |                   |
| 19 | 19                                      |                   |
| 20 | 20                                      |                   |
| 21 | 21 PROCEEDINGS REPORTED USING COMPUTE   | RIZED STENOTYPE;  |
| 22 | 22 TRANSCRIPT PRODUCED VIA COMPUTER-AI  | DED TRANSCRIPTION |
| 23 | 23                                      |                   |
| 24 | 24                                      |                   |
| 25 | 25                                      |                   |
|    |   |                   |

| 1      |  |      | 834 |
|--------|--|------|-----|
| ו<br>2 | <u>INDEX</u>                               |      |     |
| 2      |  | PAGE |     |
| 4      | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF KAZUNORI KOSHIISHI | 839  |     |
| 5      |  |      |     |
| 6      | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF GENYO TAKEDA       | 851  |     |
| 7      |  |      |     |
| 8      | DIRECT EXAMINATION OF AKIO IKEDA           | 861  |     |
| 9      | CROSS-EXAMINATION OF AKIO IKEDA            | 881  |     |
| 10     | REDIRECT EXAMINATION OF AKIO IKEDA         | 942  |     |
| 11     |  |      |     |
| 12     | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF RUSSELL SANCHEZ    | 950  |     |
| 13     |  |      |     |
| 14     | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF COLLETTE MEADER    | 954  |     |
| 15     |  |      |     |
| 16     | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF ALBERT PENELLO     | 957  |     |
| 17     |  |      |     |
| 18     | ANASCAPE RESTS                             | 958  |     |
| 19     |  |      |     |
| 20     | RULE 50 MOTION                             | 959  |     |
| 21     |  | 0/ 2 |     |
| 22     | DIRECT EXAMINATION OF JACQUALEE STORY      | 963  |     |
| 23     | CRUSS-EXAMINATION OF JACQUALEE STORY       | 982  |     |
| 24     | REDIRECT-EXAMINATION OF JACQUALEE STORY    | 999  |     |
| ∠b     |  |      |     |

|                                       | 835  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| DIRECT EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON   | 1001   |
| CROSS-EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON    | 1025   |
| REDIRECT EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON | 1030   |
|                                       |  |
| DIRECT EXAMINATION OF ROBERT DEZMELYK | 1037   |
|                                       |  |
|                                       |  |
| <u>INDEX OF EXHIBITS</u>              |  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 118               | 894  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 120               | 894  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 121               | 894  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 158               | 940  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 171               | 940  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 167               | 940  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 162               | 940  |
| Defendant's Exhibit 216               | 1024   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 308               | 1024   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 115               | 1024   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 118               | 1024   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 157               | 1024   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 167               | 1025   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 162               | 1025   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 118               | 1025   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 306               | 1043   |
| Defendant's Exhibit 306               | 1048   |
|                                       | DIRECT EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON<br>CROSS-EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON<br>REDIRECT EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON<br>DIRECT EXAMINATION OF ROBERT DEZMELYK<br><u>INDEX OF EXHIBITS</u><br>Defendant's Exhibit 118<br>Defendant's Exhibit 120<br>Defendant's Exhibit 121<br>Defendant's Exhibit 158<br>Defendant's Exhibit 167<br>Defendant's Exhibit 162<br>Defendant's Exhibit 162<br>Defendant's Exhibit 115<br>Defendant's Exhibit 115<br>Defendant's Exhibit 157<br>Defendant's Exhibit 157<br>Defendant's Exhibit 167<br>Defendant's Exhibit 167<br>Defendant's Exhibit 157<br>Defendant's Exhibit 167<br>Defendant's Exhibit 157<br>Defendant's Exhibit 162<br>Defendant's Exhibit 163<br>Defendant's Exhibit 165 |

|    |                        |      | 836 |
|----|------------------------|------|-----|
| 1  | Exhibit 306            | 1048 |     |
| 2  | Defendant's Exhibit 15 | 1049 |     |
| 3  | Defendant's Exhibit 1  | 1056 |     |
| 4  | Defendant's Exhibit 1  | 1059 |     |
| 5  |                        |      |     |
| 6  |                        |      |     |
| 7  |                        |      |     |
| 8  |                        |      |     |
| 9  |                        |      |     |
| 10 |                        |      |     |
| 11 |                        |      |     |
| 12 |                        |      |     |
| 13 |                        |      |     |
| 14 |                        |      |     |
| 15 |                        |      |     |
| 16 |                        |      |     |
| 17 |                        |      |     |
| 18 |                        |      |     |
| 19 |                        |      |     |
| 20 |                        |      |     |
| 21 |                        |      |     |
| 22 |                        |      |     |
| 23 |                        |      |     |
| 24 |                        |      |     |
| 25 |                        |      |     |
|    |                        |      |     |

(REPORTER'S NOTES ANASCAPE VS. MICROSOFT, 1 2 JURY TRIAL VOLUME 4, 8:45 A.M., THURSDAY, 05/08/2008, LUFKIN, TEXAS, HON. RON CLARK PRESIDING) 3 (OPEN COURT, ALL PARTIES PRESENT, JURY NOT 4 5 PRESENT) THE COURT: 6 All right. An issue was brought up dealing with the defendant's infringement expert. I 7 don't think we'll be getting to that person before the 8 9 first break and maybe not until lunch. Is that correct? MR. CAWLEY: First of all, it's not their 10 11 infringement expert, your Honor; it's their PTO expert. But second, your Honor, is correct. I don't think there 12 13 is a way we can get there. 14 Oh, I'm sorry. There's objections to both of 15 them? PRESTA: Yes. 16 MR. 17 MR. CAWLEY: Okay. My mistake, judge. But despite my confusion, I think I am fairly 18 19 clear we're not going to get to them before lunch. 20 THE COURT: Okay. Which one is going to be Because that's the order I'm going to 21 called first? look at this. 22 23 MR. PRESTA: Our technical expert, Mr. Dezmelyk. 24 25 THE COURT: Okay. That's what I was

| July mai, volume - | Jury | Trial, | Vo | lume | 4 |
|--------------------|------|--------|----|------|---|
|--------------------|------|--------|----|------|---|

|    | 838  |
|----|--|
| 1  | thinking. Very good. Let's go ahead and bring in         |
| 2  | MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, very quickly.                   |
| 3  | Mr. Ikeda is going to be the next live witness after the |
| 4  | depositions.   |
| 5  | THE COURT: Right.  |
| 6  | MR. GUNTHER: Do you think we're going to                 |
| 7  | have a break before that just in terms of time?          |
| 8  | MR. CAWLEY: Yes. I think our depositions                 |
| 9  | are about an hour long.                                  |
| 10 | MR. GUNTHER: Okay. I'll wait.                            |
| 11 | THE COURT: Bring in the jury, please.                    |
| 12 | (The jury enters the courtroom, 8:46 a.m.)               |
| 13 | THE COURT: Good morning, ladies and                      |
| 14 | gentlemen. Glad to see you back again, and we're now     |
| 15 | going to continue on with the deposition. As counsel     |
| 16 | indicated, the deposition is taken prior to trial.       |
| 17 | Attorneys from both sides are there. A court reporter    |
| 18 | is there. The witness is under oath. And you will        |
| 19 | evaluate and accept this testimony as nearly as possible |
| 20 | as if the witness was testifying here live. Sometimes    |
| 21 | you can't judge a person quite as well on video as you   |
| 22 | can live but I'll tell you that the person was under     |
| 23 | oath and they are to be considered, as much as possible, |
| 24 | by you as though they were testifying live when you're   |
| 25 | evaluating them.   |

Are we ready? 1 MR. BOVENKAMP: Yes, your Honor. 2 Just a 3 brief interim statement just to refresh the jury of who they are going to see. 4 5 THE COURT: Okay. 6 MR. BOVENKAMP: Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, as I indicated yesterday before we left for the 7 day, you're going to see the video testimony of a 8 9 Nintendo engineer named Mr. Koshiishi. DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF KAZUNORI KOSHIISHI 10 11 Q. Good morning, Mr. Koshiishi. 12 Good morning. Α. 13 Mr. Koshiishi, what is your present position with 0. Nintendo? 14 15 Α. Well, "post" is a vague word; but currently at Nintendo I'm affiliated with a development department. 16 17 Which Nintendo products have you worked on the 0. development of? 18 19 Α. Mainly on the cartridges and accessories for the Nintendo 64, also the GameCube controller; and I'll just 20 stop there. 21 22 Also GameCube accessories, also DS-type 23 accessories, and development of the DS. I would just 24 like to add that I didn't design the DS or the DS Lite 25 itself, but I worked on DS-type models.

840 Was the DualShock 2 controller a successful 0. 1 2 controller? 3 Α. Well, the console was widely sold; and, so, yes, I think it sold in the same way. 4 5 Mr. Koshiishi, the GameCube controller came out 0 around four or five years after the Nintendo 64 6 7 controller; is that correct? 8 Α. Yes. 9 0. What improvements were made to the GameCube controller over the Nintendo 64 controller? 10 11 Α. Well, first, with the Nintendo 64 controller, there were three grips attached. That was reduced to two 12 13 grips in the case of the GameCube. And as for the arrangement of the buttons, 14 15 they were reassigned for the sake of optimization. And you referred earlier to the Rumble Pak. 16 That was built in -- a vibration motor was built into 17 18 the GameCube. 19 And the L/R buttons evolved and became analog buttons. And the C unit, which consisted of four 20 buttons, became a C stick that is one stick. 21 That's 22 all. 23 Because the Rumble Pak was built into the Nintendo Q. GameCube controller, all developers know that users will 24 25 be able to use that feature when they are producing

|    | 843  |
|----|--|
| 1  | games; is that correct?                                  |
| 2  | A. Yes.  |
| 3  | Q. Now, you said when you were developing the GameCube   |
| 4  | controller, that it was important to keep the total cost |
| 5  | below 900 yen; is that correct?                          |
| 6  | A. Yes.  |
| 7  | Q. So, if the motor for the rumble feature was an        |
| 8  | expensive component, you could have saved a lot of money |
| 9  | by not putting in the motor; is that correct?            |
| 10 | A. Yes, I think so.                                      |
| 11 | Q. Be despite the cost, Nintendo decided to include      |
| 12 | the motor for the rumble feature; is that correct?       |
| 13 | A. Yes.  |
| 14 | Q. So, just so I understand you, by increasing the       |
| 15 | number or types of features on a controller, it affects  |
| 16 | the variety of games that software developers can        |
| 17 | create; is that true?                                    |
| 18 | A. That potential exists.                                |
| 19 | Q. If the C stick were mounted on the main circuit       |
| 20 | board, it would be taller than it is now; and it would   |
| 21 | be more difficult to use than it is right now; is that   |
| 22 | correct?   |
| 23 | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 24 | Q. And if you could turn to Figure 2 of Exhibit 292,     |
| 25 | which is the '700 patent.                                |
|    |  |

Г

|    |  | 842         |
|----|--|-------------|
| 1  | 1 A. Yes.  |             |
| 2  | 2 Q. Have you reviewed Figure 2 of Exhibit 292   | 2 before?   |
| 3  | A. As I said earlier, I hadn't done that pri     | ior to      |
| 4  | Iooking at them after I had been contacted       | by the IP   |
| 5  | 5 department.                                    |             |
| 6  | 6 Q. You have reviewed Figure 2 of this paten    | t within    |
| 7  | 7 the past year, correct?                        |             |
| 8  | A. Yes.  |             |
| 9  | 9 Q. Figure 2 of the '700 patent depicts a cro   | oss section |
| 10 | ) of a game controller that is described by this | ; patent;   |
| 11 | 1 is that correct?                               |             |
| 12 | A. Yes.  |             |
| 13 | 3 Q. Now, in the middle of the figure, there i   | is a circle |
| 14 | that has been labeled with the number "12"; is   | ; that      |
| 15 | 5 correct?                                       |             |
| 16 | 6 A. Yes.  |             |
| 17 | 7 Q. What is that?                               |             |
| 18 | A. It's a ball.                                  |             |
| 19 | 9 Q. Okay.                                       |             |
| 20 | A. Sorry. It's a sphere.                         |             |
| 21 | 1 Q. Do you see a component in the figure tha    | tis         |
| 22 | 2 labeled "124"?                                 |             |
| 23 | A. Yes.  |             |
| 24 | 4 Q. What is that?                               |             |
| 25 | 5 A. I think it's a roller.                      |             |

Г

|    | 843   |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Now, there are three rollers depicted in this        |
| 2  | figure; is that correct?                                |
| 3  | A. Yes.   |
| 4  | Q. So, from looking at the structure of this figure,    |
| 5  | if a user were to rotate the ball, then the rollers     |
| 6  | could tell that the ball was moving; is that correct?   |
| 7  | A. I believe so.  |
| 8  | Q. So, the rollers are used to detect rotational        |
| 9  | movement of the ball; is that correct?                  |
| 10 | A. Yes.   |
| 11 | Q. Now, the ball is surrounded by a cup-like structure  |
| 12 | that has been labeled "16"; is that correct?            |
| 13 | A. Yes.   |
| 14 | Q. Can you tell from looking at the figure whether the  |
| 15 | structure of the game controller allows it to sense the |
| 16 | linear movement of the cup?                             |
| 17 | A. Yes.   |
| 18 | Q. So, for instance, if you were to push down on the    |
| 19 | cup toward the ball, then the structure labeled "22"    |
| 20 | would move, as well; is that correct?                   |
| 21 | A. Yes.   |
| 22 | Q. And in the same way, if you were to move the cup     |
| 23 | back and forth, the controller is structured to sense   |
| 24 | that linear movement; is that correct?                  |
| 25 | A. Yes.   |
|    |   |

844 Q. So, this is a 6-degree-of-freedom controller, isn't 1 2 it? Yes. 3 Α. So, there are three rollers associated with the 4 0. ball and each of those rollers would provide a separate 5 output to some sort of computer unit associated with the 6 controller: is that true? 7 Yes. 8 Α. 9 So, conversely, the CPU receives three signals 0. 10 associated with the trackball that represent three axes 11 of rotational movement; is that correct? Yes. 12 Α. So, similarly, because the cup is movable on three 13 0. linear axes, the cup would send three separate signals 14 15 to the CPU, each one representing movement on a different linear axis; is that correct? 16 17 A Yes. If you removed the cup from the controller depicted 18 0. 19 in Figure 2, you would not be able to sense movement on three linear axes; is that correct? 20 21 Α. No, you wouldn't. But if you still had the trackball, you would still 22 Q. 23 have a 3-degree-of-freedom controller because you could 24 still sense rotational movement on three axes; is that 25 correct?

Γ

|    | 845  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Yes.  |
| 2  | Q. So, if you remove the cup, instead of six separate    |
| 3  | outputs being sent to the CPU, there would only be three |
| 4  | outputs sent to the CPU, one representing each axis of   |
| 5  | rotational movement of the trackball; is that correct?   |
| 6  | A. Yes.  |
| 7  | Q. Now, conversely, if you did not remove the cup but    |
| 8  | you did remove the trackball, then you would still have  |
| 9  | a 3-degree-of-freedom controller except it would be able |
| 10 | to measure linear movement on three axes and not         |
| 11 | rotational movement on three axes; is that correct?      |
| 12 | A. Yes.  |
| 13 | Q. If instead of having a trackball within a cup, if     |
| 14 | you had a controller with a trackball on one side and a  |
| 15 | movable cup on the other, you would still have a         |
| 16 | 6-degree-of-freedom controller because you would have    |
| 17 | three axes of rotation through the trackball and three   |
| 18 | axes of linear movement through the cup; is that         |
| 19 | correct?   |
| 20 | A. Are you saying that on one hand you would have a      |
| 21 | cup but no ball and on the other hand you would have a   |
| 22 | ball with no cup?  |
| 23 | Q. Yes.  |
| 24 | A. Yes.  |
| 25 | Q. If you had this controller with a cup on one side     |
|    |  |

and the trackball on the other, the CPU would still 1 2 receive three analog signals representing three axes of 3 rotational movement and three analog signals representing three axes of linear movement; is that 4 correct? 5 6 Α. Yes. 7 And software developers can use the signal sent to 0. the CPU to program games on a television screen to do 8 9 different things; is that correct? Yes. 10 Α. 11 Q. So, for instance, if you had a trackball and a cup, a software developer could use the three analog signals 12 from the trackball to move one character on a screen and 13 use the three analog signals from the cup to move 14 15 another character on the screen; is that correct? Yes. 16 Α. So, instead of a controller with a cup and a 17 0. trackball, if you had a controller with two trackballs, 18 19 you would not have any signals representing linear movement; is that correct? 20 I believe that's so. 21 A 22 But if you had two trackballs that were structured Q. like the one in Figure 2, you could still send six 23 24 analog signals to the CPU; is that correct? 25 Α. Yes.

Γ

|    | 847  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. And a game developer could use those six signals in   |
| 2  | a similar way where a user could use the left trackball  |
| 3  | to move one character on a screen and the user could use |
| 4  | the right trackball to move another character on the     |
| 5  | screen; is that correct?                                 |
| 6  | A. Yes.  |
| 7  | Q. So, if you would like to design a controller that     |
| 8  | produces six analog signals to transmit to a CPU, one    |
| 9  | way of doing it is like a controller structured here     |
| 10 | with a trackball found in a cup; is that correct?        |
| 11 | A. I think so.   |
| 12 | Q. Another way to create a controller that produces      |
| 13 | six analog signals to send to a CPU would be just to     |
| 14 | have two trackballs that each sent three analog signals  |
| 15 | to the same CPU; is that correct?                        |
| 16 | A. Yes.  |
| 17 | Q. Mr. Koshiishi, my name is Bob Gunther. I'm one of     |
| 18 | Nintendo's attorneys, and I'm going to ask you some      |
| 19 | questions at this point in the deposition.               |
| 20 | I want to go first to the questioning that               |
| 21 | Mr. Garza had of you at the very end of the deposition   |
| 22 | before the break. And he showed you Figure 2 of the      |
| 23 | '700 patent, correct?                                    |
| 24 | A. Yes.  |
| 25 | Q. And then he asked you whether or not,                 |
|    |  |

Г

|    | 848  |
|----|--|
| 1  | hypothetically, a controller could be developed that had |
| 2  | a cup on one side and a trackball on the other side,     |
| 3  | correct?   |
| 4  | A. Yes.  |
| 5  | Q. Is there any disclosure in the '700 patent that you   |
| 6  | are aware of of a controller that has a separate         |
| 7  | trackball on one side and a separate cup on the other    |
| 8  | si de?   |
| 9  | A. No.   |
| 10 | Q. And he also gave you a hypothetical of a controller   |
| 11 | that would have two separate three-axis trackballs. Do   |
| 12 | you recall that questioning?                             |
| 13 | A. Yes.  |
| 14 | Q. Is anywhere in the '700 patent, is there a            |
| 15 | disclosure of a controller that has two separate         |
| 16 | three-axis trackballs?                                   |
| 17 | A. No.   |
| 18 | Q. Now, the three hypotheticals that Mr. Garza asked     |
| 19 | you, the one with the the controller with the            |
| 20 | separate trackball and separate cup, that's the first    |
| 21 | one; the second one with three sorry with two            |
| 22 | three-axis trackballs, that's the second one; and the    |
| 23 | third one is the one with three two-axis trackballs.     |
| 24 | My question is: Are you aware of any video               |
| 25 | game controllers that have ever been sold that have any  |

of those hypothetical configurations? 1 2 Α. No. 3 0. Is there any disclosure in either of the '525 or '700 patents, to your knowledge, of a controller that 4 has two separate analog joysticks? 5 No. 6 Α. THE COURT: Hold up one minute, counsel. 7 8 Ladies and gentlemen, I did forget to mention 9 that when these depositions are getting prepared to be 10 shown to you, I tell the lawyers to edit them to get rid 11 of as much as possible. These things go on -- some of these depositions took seven and eight hours. 12 13 Obviously, you didn't want to sit here for seven or eight hours; so, I've told them some time back to cut 14 15 them down to what's necessary. That's why you'll see 16 sometimes it will jump from time to time or there will be a question and then there will be a break before the 17 Maybe the lawyers had some kind of objection 18 answer. 19 that got dealt with. I told them to cut all that out. 20 I'm not trying to hide stuff from you. It's just that I think a 30-minute deposition is a lot better than an 21 22 8-hour video; and you probably do, too. 23 The other thing is at one point you saw the "check interpreter." Both sides are allowed to have an 24 interpreter present. You'll have one main interpreter; 25

| 1  | but just in case there is some question about exactly    |
|----|--|
| 2  | what a word means, you might see that check interpreter  |
| 3  | will say something. As long as they agree, then you can  |
| 4  | accept that as the interpretation. We'll have a witness  |
| 5  | later live, and you'll see the same thing here. It's     |
| 6  | just because sometimes, especially in a technical field, |
| 7  | there might be a little question about the precise       |
| 8  | translation of a word; and that's why the second person  |
| 9  | is there, just to be sure about it. If there was a real  |
| 10 | dispute, I would work it out. But when you see it come   |
| 11 | up there and they seem to agree, then you can just take  |
| 12 | that as what they have agreed on.                        |
| 13 | Go ahead, counsel.                                       |
| 14 | MR. BOVENKAMP: Thank you, your Honor.                    |
| 15 | The next witness that you are going to hear              |
| 16 | from is also a Nintendo engineer, by the name of         |
| 17 | Mr. Takeda. This deposition testimony, or this video     |
| 18 | testimony that you're going to hear, is 20 minutes long. |
| 19 | He is going to testify about the importance of complex   |
| 20 | independent controls that allow the manipulation of      |
| 21 | multiple objects in video games.                         |
| 22 | The other thing that's important in this                 |
| 23 | testimony is the testimony about rumble that he calls    |
| 24 | the output or the "feedback output function." He's       |
| 25 | going to testify that that was a necessary feature in    |

850

| _  |   |
|----|---|
|    | 8   |
| 1  | Nintendo's controllers.                                 |
| 2  | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF GENYO TAKEDA                    |
| 3  | Q. Good morning, Mr. Takeda.                            |
| 4  | Mr. Takeda, you are also the general manager            |
| 5  | of the integrated research and development division; is |
| 6  | that correct?   |
| 7  | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 8  | Q. So, Nintendo owns patents, then; is that correct?    |
| 9  | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 10 | Q. Now, the Wii Nunchuk still uses a thumbstick,        |
| 11 | correct?  |
| 12 | A. Well, all along there's been an ongoing debate       |
| 13 | among us. The idea is to achieve simplicity, to make    |
| 14 | things simple. When you are using the video game on a   |
| 15 | TV screen, you are moving objects. You have to control  |
| 16 | the movement of multiobjects. I think this is the       |
| 17 | history of video games. So, where you are a playing     |
| 18 | character, you have to control how that player moves.   |
| 19 | And, also, there's the head, what we call the "lover's  |
| 20 | neck" or "rubberneck," whether it moves                 |
| 21 | Sorry, a rubberneck, not lover's neck.                  |
| 22 | Sorry, rubberneck. Sorry.                               |
| 23 | whether the neck moves this way or that                 |
| 24 | way. And, also, for instance, with the hand holding a   |
| 25 | gun, whether the hand moves this way or that way. So,   |
|    |   |

this means there is history in video games of this 1 2 multimovement. 3 We wish to attract new customers who had not been used to playing games and make it easy for them to 4 5 get involved in gaming. In order to do that, our desire 6 and our goal was to have a simple arrayment [sic] of buttons -- simple buttons -- was to have simple buttons 7 8 and very -- and few buttons. This need to be 9 independently controlling multiple movable objects on a TV screen so the body may move forward while the neck 10 11 moves in another direction or, for instance, the body 12 may move one way while the pistol held in the hand may move another way. So, there's this need in video games 13 to have independent control. So, we wanted to be able 14 15 to satisfy both those new gaming participants as well as what we call "gamers," those who are very used to 16 playing games. 17 18 So, we wanted to present the product as 19 something simple, while at the same time have complex 20 controls, independent controls, that will allow manipulation of multiple objects. So, there are many, 21 22 many variables that we are wanting to input. This was the concept of the Wii. 23 24 Q. I'm going to ask my question again. 25 Does the Wii Nunchuk have a thumbstick?

852

As I said earlier, many games have a stick like 1 Α. 2 this. This is manipulated in this way. THE INTERPRETER: And the witness revolved 3 the stick. 4 5 This is mainly manipulated by the thumb; and, so, Α. yes, it does have a joystick in the controller. 6 7 Now, could you replace that joystick with a 0. trackball? 8 When you say "replace," it would have a different 9 Α. 10 touch and feel. And the games, the touch and feel is 11 very important. I think it will be very difficult to replace. However, if, for instance -- you can use a 12 keyboard to do that. So, in that sense, it could 13 replace that. You could use that. However, I think 14 15 that the touch and feel would be totally different. UNIDENTIFIED SPEAKER: I'm sorry. I can't 16 hear, please, if you are speaking in Japanese. 17 18 THE INTERPRETER: I'll tell you what. She was concerned that, in the second "replace," I used the 19 phrase "replace"; and she believed he said, "You could 20 use that." And if I recall, I think she is actually 21 correct. "So, in that sense, you could use that." 22 23 Games on the GameCube have been designed to take Q. 24 advantage of the two joysticks on the GameCube 25 controller; is that correct?

Yes, but I think this also relates to an earlier 1 Α. 2 question of yours. You have to consider the history of the Nintendo controller in the previous product; that 3 is, the Nintendo 66 -- 64. 4 5 Thank you. Sorry. 6 -- the Nintendo 64. We had an analog continuous-control joystick. We were the first to 7 8 create this worldwide, this thumb-operated joystick. 9 There have been various types of controllers, joysticks. There's been the plus key, also the C button unit 10 11 similar to the plus key. So, this is not the first time that there have been two of those. Already in the 12 previous generation products, this bi-directional unit 13 So, it was already there before the 14 was included. 15 GameCube -- they were already there. If you are asking me a question about the 16 GameCube controller, then, for me, it would be much, 17 much easier to talk about that if you would place in 18 19 front of me that controller from that previous 20 generation. Mr. Takeda, you've been handed what has been marked 21 0. 22 Exhibit 303. And what is that? 23 Α. It's a Nintendo 64 controller; however, the controller is not standard. I've not seen any 24 25 controller quite as bright as -- brightly colored as

But it is one kind of N64 controller. 1 this one. 2 Now, is this controller the previous generation 0. controller from the GameCube? 3 This is a product that was sold about five 4 Α. Yeah. years before --5 THE INTERPRETER: And the witness is pointing 6 7 to the GameCube controller. -- went on sale. 8 Α. 9 Now, the N64 controller only has one joystick, 0. 10 correct? 11 Α. One analog joystick, yes. Does it have any nonanalog joysticks? 12 Q. Well, it depends on the definition of 13 Α. Yes. "joystick." And you have to consider the history of 14 15 video games. The Nintendo 64 game console was the first to offer 3-D graphics on-screen -- first game platform 16 to offer 3-D graphics on-screen. 17 18 So, in order to display 3-D graphics 19 on-screen, they are compared to 2-D graphics. There 20 were many, many variables that were needed as inputs. 21 So, compared to the previous generation, one was able to 22 make many inputs. There was the plus button. Then there was this other button, which we also all our "plus 23 button, on this side --24 25 THE INTERPRETER: The interpreter is

|    | 85   |
|----|--|
| 1  | speaking. The witness was referring to the right side    |
| 2  | of the controller, looking at it from his perspective.   |
| 3  | A and this these three together with the                 |
| 4  | joystick, then, were the controls determining direction. |
| 5  | So, historically, this was the first time that this was  |
| 6  | achieved was with the Nintendo 64 console. So, there     |
| 7  | was this continuous control; and then these other two    |
| 8  | controllers were able to control direction.              |
| 9  | Q. Why did Nintendo include vibration in the Wii         |
| 10 | Remote?  |
| 11 | A. Well, for a player, not only input but feedback,      |
| 12 | output function, is I believe very important.            |
| 13 | Therefore, in the Nintendo 64, the GameCube, and the     |
| 14 | Wii, the vibration feature was included as output. So,   |
| 15 | a decision was made to include an output as a necessary  |
| 16 | feature.   |
| 17 | THE COURT: All right. Ladies and gentlemen,              |
| 18 | we're going to go ahead and take a break. I'll ask you   |
| 19 | to be back at five past.                                 |
| 20 | Please remember my instructions not to                   |
| 21 | discuss the case among yourselves.                       |
| 22 | (The jury exits the courtroom, 9:45 a.m.)                |
| 23 | THE COURT: Okay. The objections submitted                |
| 24 | by Mr. Bovenkamp to the three or I guess four            |
| 25 | demonstratives or charts or actually I guess there       |
|    |  |

857 are several of them here dealing with -- and I'm not 1 2 sure that's pronounced -- Dezmelyk? 3 MR. PRESTA: Yes. It's Dezmelyk. THE COURT: 4 Dezmelyk, okay. 5 Brings up a question that -- and this is 6 probably a timing question. I see the dispute between 7 the experts here as factual and not based on interpretation. In other words, it's what it is and how 8 9 is that accelerometer built, made. We saw some diagrams of what it looks like on the inside. Obviously those 10 11 are blown-up diagrams. And I'm not sure. Is it Dr. Dezmelyk or mister? 12 13 MR. PRESTA: It's mister, your Honor. 14 THE COURT: Okay. Is talking in terms of --15 or he seems to be distinguishing it on a different description of how vectors are described. But quite 16 clearly, if this boils down to a couple of experts 17 saying, "Judge Clark said this in his claim 18 19 construction, " "Judge Clark said that in his claim construction," or "The claim construction is this or 20 that," that's a different matter. I'm going to have to 21 22 give the jury some guidance. 23 Both sides might want to be cautious about that. I mean, a fact dispute about exactly what's going 24 Neither side 25 on with that little chip is one thing.

| 1  | knows how I'm going to rule on the other side of it or   |
|----|--|
| 2  | what I think I mean, I've read 192 and the what I        |
| 3  | think is seen in there. But if we're going to get into   |
| 4  | some kind of claim construction dispute, I want to do    |
| 5  | that at lunch or this evening, not while the jury is     |
| 6  | hanging around wondering why we're wasting their time.   |
| 7  | So, we need to get that straightened out.                |
| 8  | Now, I think that in his report, he does                 |
| 9  | criticize Dr. Howe about the one chip. And that was      |
| 10 | brought up in cross-examination. So, I don't see that    |
| 11 | as a problem. And if he wants to try to explain why      |
| 12 | that one chip is not really set up with pairs of sensors |
| 13 | like Dr. Howe said, that's I think that's a fair take    |
| 14 | on his report. I'm really more concerned about an        |
| 15 | attempt to say that's my construction because, honestly, |
| 16 | I see that as a factual issue, exactly how that thing is |
| 17 | built and what it actually does. But I'll also say       |
| 18 | if I mean, if I'm misreading what the doctor is going    |
| 19 | to try to say and I notice in his report he              |
| 20 | frequently phrases it in terms of which I guess any      |
| 21 | witness would like to do is, "Ladies and gentlemen,      |
| 22 | the judge has already told you this is true; so, it must |
| 23 | be true." That's not on this particular dispute I        |
| 24 | haven't been asked to construe what that accelerometer   |
| 25 | is; and no one asked me to construe what a sensor is,    |

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891 858

either, not just a sensor by itself. That's actually 1 discussed in the patent, in the specification. 2 3 So, what -- I mean, do we need to have that Claim Construction Hearing before he testifies or what? 4 5 MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, I don't believe so. I believe it's -- we agree with you that -- I think the 6 7 factual issue -- I don't think we need a claim construction of that section of the claim when it says 8 9 "two bi-directional proportional sensors." In our view, we would not be representing that your Honor has made 10 11 any ruling on that. 12 THE COURT: Okay. 13 We would just be looking at that MR. PRESTA: term from a factual issue. 14 15 THE COURT: And from plaintiff's point of view? I mean, do you see it as just --16 17 MR. CAWLEY: We agree, your Honor. We don't think that term needs to be construed. 18 19 THE COURT: Okay. We didn't ask for it to be 20 MR. CAWLEY: And there will be a factual dispute about 21 construed. 22 whether there is a sensor or two sensors inside there or 23 not, but that's a factual dispute. 24 THE COURT: Okay. Fine. 25 In that case, I do believe that he has

|    | 80   |
|----|--|
| 1  | outlined that dispute and talked about it being in terms |
| 2  | of one accelerometer and at least the way I read it,     |
| 3  | he's discussing how it works differently. And it may     |
| 4  | just be I don't know who brought it up the first         |
| 5  | time a matter of semantics when you discuss vectors,     |
| 6  | but that's something that in the end may just come down  |
| 7  | to the credibility of the witnesses and the other        |
| 8  | evidence as they make it. So, I'll allow him to go into  |
| 9  | that.  |
| 10 | Now, if I mean, if you think he's trying                 |
| 11 | to get into claim construction of some kind, obviously   |
| 12 | make your objection. I can't anticipate what he's        |
| 13 | actually going to say, but I don't see it here in the    |
| 14 | actual charts themselves. But, I mean, I'm not trying    |
| 15 | to cut off all possible objections on a witness I        |
| 16 | haven't heard say a word yet.                            |
| 17 | All right. We will be in recess, then, until             |
| 18 | five past.   |
| 19 | Is the next witness going to be live with the            |
| 20 | translators?   |
| 21 | MR. CAWLEY: Yes, your Honor.                             |
| 22 | THE COURT: Okay. If we can go ahead and get              |
| 23 | them set up. I think we have two chairs up here.         |
| 24 | (Recess, 9:52 a.m. to 10:13 a.m.)                        |
| 25 | MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, just one very quick             |
|    |  |

|    | 861  |
|----|--|
| 1  | thing. Mr. Cawley has been kind enough to let us get     |
| 2  | set up for cross-examination of Mr. Ikeda. At a couple   |
| 3  | of points during that we're going to have him            |
| 4  | demonstrate a couple of games, and we're going to ask    |
| 5  | him to come off the witness stand. The interpreters      |
| 6  | will follow him, but I just wanted to let the court know |
| 7  | we were going to do that.                                |
| 8  | THE COURT: Okay. Go ahead and get the jury,              |
| 9  | pl ease.   |
| 10 | (The jury enters the courtroom, 10:13 a.m.)              |
| 11 | (The oath is administered to the                         |
| 12 | interpreters.)   |
| 13 | (The oath is administered to the witness                 |
| 14 | through the interpreter.)                                |
| 15 | THE COURT: Counsel?                                      |
| 16 | MR. CAWLEY: Thank you, your Honor.                       |
| 17 | DIRECT EXAMINATION OF AKIO IKEDA                         |
| 18 | CALLED ON BEHALF OF THE PLAINTIFF                        |
| 19 | BY MR. CAWLEY:   |
| 20 | Q. Good morning, Mr. Ikeda.                              |
| 21 | A. Good morning.   |
| 22 | Q. Would you tell the jury your name, please?            |
| 23 | A. My name is Akio, A-K-I-O, Ikeda, I-K-E-D-A. I have    |
| 24 | come from Japan; and I work for Nintendo, which is       |
| 25 | located in Kyoto in Japan.                               |

Γ

|    | 86  |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Mr. Ikeda, did you invent the accelerometer?         |
| 2  | A. No. I did not invent the accelerometer itself.       |
| 3  | Q. Did you invent the Wii Remote?                       |
| 4  | A. Yes. I combined various sensors and developed the    |
| 5  | Wii Remote control.                                     |
| 6  | Q. Did you do this by yourself?                         |
| 7  | A. Basically. Development was carried out by a          |
| 8  | development team.                                       |
| 9  | Q. I see. So, was it the development team that          |
| 10 | invented the Wii Remote?                                |
| 11 | A. Yes. It was carried out by a development team.       |
| 12 | However, I was most knowledgeable about accelerometers; |
| 13 | and, so, I was the leader of this development team.     |
| 14 | Q. You have worked for Nintendo for about ten years,    |
| 15 | right?  |
| 16 | A. No. I've been working for the company for 15         |
| 17 | years. I believe at the time of my deposition, I        |
| 18 | explained that it had been 15 years.                    |
| 19 | Q. Excuse me. I must have written the name down         |
| 20 | wrong.  |
| 21 | How many people work for Nintendo?                      |
| 22 | A. At Nintendo headquarters, the main office,           |
| 23 | approximately 1,500.                                    |
| 24 | Q. And how about in the rest of the world?              |
| 25 | A. I'm sorry to say I really don't have an answer to    |
|    |   |

| 863  |
|--|
| that question.   |
| Q. Okay. Have you testified in court before?             |
| A. No, I never have. This is my first time.              |
| Q. Did you come to court earlier this week so that you   |
| could see the courtroom and sit in the witness chair?    |
| A. Yes. Day before yesterday, on one occasion I did      |
| come to the court.                                       |
| Q. Okay. And have you talked to people about your        |
| testimony at the trial?                                  |
| A. Yes. I have spoken about it to some degree with       |
| Nintendo staff and lawyers.                              |
| Q. And have you talked to people about things that       |
| have happened in the trial?                              |
| A. I have spoken to Nintendo staff and to lawyers        |
| about the Anascape suit itself.                          |
| Q. I see. And have they told you things that have        |
| happened during the trial of this case?                  |
| MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, I have an objection             |
| on privilege grounds, the way the question was phrased.  |
| MR. CAWLEY: I haven't asked about the                    |
| content of the   |
| THE COURT: Well, I'll allow him to answer                |
| whether or not he has spoken about what's gone on at the |
| trial.   |
| A. I have not been told about what has been happening    |
|  |

864 during the trial. I am here to tell the truth. 1 BY MR. CAWLEY: 2 3 0. Okay. Good. Were you involved -- you've already told me 4 5 that. 6 Did you also play a role in the development 7 of the Wii Classic? 8 My development team developed the Wii Remote Α. Yes. control, the Nunchuk, and the Classic. 9 And how many people are on your development team? 10 Q. 11 If we're talking about the Wii Remote control, that Α. team would be the one that handled the development of 12 13 the electronic circuits. And including myself, it would 14 be five people. 15 0. And where did that team work? The main workplace would have been the 16 Α. headquarters, the main office of Nintendo. 17 That would be in Kyoto in Japan. 18 19 0. Did other members of the team contribute ideas to 20 the product or only you? As a matter of fact, at a stage before the 21 A 22 development team, there was a planning team; and the various members of the planning team came up with 23 various ideas. And I drew them together and arranged 24 25 these ideas and in that way came up with the Remote

Г

|    | 865   |
|----|---|
| 1  | control.  |
| 2  | So, the way it worked is I had been the                 |
| 3  | leader of the planning team; and having been that       |
| 4  | leader, I became the leader of the development team.    |
| 5  | And in that way the Remote control was developed.       |
| 6  | Q. But it is true, isn't it, that others besides you    |
| 7  | contributed ideas to the development?                   |
| 8  | A. Yes, that is the truth.                              |
| 9  | Q. Okay. Thank you.                                     |
| 10 | Isn't it also true, Mr. Ikeda, that you can             |
| 11 | only use the Wii Nunchuk with a Wii Remote?             |
| 12 | A. That is correct.                                     |
| 13 | Q. And the Wii Nunchuk connected to the Wii Remote      |
| 14 | adds another thumbstick; isn't that correct?            |
| 15 | A. That is correct.                                     |
| 16 | Q. And it's also true, isn't it, that connecting the    |
| 17 | Wii Nunchuk to the Remote adds additional buttons?      |
| 18 | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 19 | Q. Now, for simple games such as Wii Sports, sometimes  |
| 20 | the Wii Remote controller alone is enough to play those |
| 21 | games, correct?   |
| 22 | A. Yes, that's right.                                   |
| 23 | Q. But for more complex games, you'd agree that it's    |
| 24 | helpful to have an added thumbstick and buttons for the |
| 25 | left hand, correct?                                     |

| 1  | A. Well, I think the more appropriate way to put it      |
|----|--|
| 2  | would be that it becomes a controller that is more       |
| 3  | appropriate to a kind of game that requires lots of      |
| 4  | buttons. In the case of my mother, for example, the      |
| 5  | more buttons it has, the more she begins to dislike it.  |
| 6  | Q. But this is the question that I asked you: Isn't      |
| 7  | it true that for more complex games, it's helpful to     |
| 8  | have an added thumbstick and buttons for the left hand?  |
| 9  | A. Yes. I think it makes it definitely easier to use     |
| 10 | if you're playing a game that requires a complex set of  |
| 11 | buttons.   |
| 12 | Q. Thank you. And, in fact, this is so important that    |
| 13 | when someone buys a Wii, it comes with a Nunchuk; isn't  |
| 14 | that correct?  |
| 15 | A. Yes. In the case of the Nintendo product, the Wii,    |
| 16 | it comes with one Remote control and one Nunchuk.        |
| 17 | However, if you really want to play                      |
| 18 | complicated games, you can get a Classic Controller.     |
| 19 | And, so, in my view and this is just my view I           |
| 20 | think the reason that the two come together when you buy |
| 21 | a Wii, it's not necessarily for playing complicated      |
| 22 | games but for Wii Sports, for example, you have to have  |
| 23 | the two of them. The two of them are necessary for       |
| 24 | certain Wii Sports.                                      |
| 25 | Q. In fact, it's true, isn't it, Mr. Ikeda, that there   |

|    | 86   |
|----|--|
| 1  | are some games for the Wii console that cannot be played |
| 2  | without the Nunchuk?                                     |
| 3  | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 4  | Q. And for those games, if you try to play the game      |
| 5  | and you do not have a Nunchuk, a message comes on the    |
| 6  | screen telling you to connect the Nunchuk; is that       |
| 7  | right?   |
| 8  | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 9  | Q. Now let me ask you about a particular game, not a     |
| 10 | sports game but the one called Zelda: Twilight Princess. |
| 11 | You have played this game, haven't you?                  |
| 12 | A. Yes, I have.  |
| 13 | Q. And this game was available for the GameCube          |
| 14 | console; is that right?                                  |
| 15 | A. There is a Zelda: Twilight Princess game for the      |
| 16 | GameCube, yes; but it is sold on a different disk.       |
| 17 | Q. And to control the Zelda: Twilight Princess on the    |
| 18 | GameCube, you use the GameCube controller, correct?      |
| 19 | A. Yes, you operate it with the GameCube controller.     |
| 20 | Q. But this video game is also available for the Wii     |
| 21 | console, correct?  |
| 22 | A. It has been arranged to be played on the Wii and      |
| 23 | then put on disk, yes.                                   |
| 24 | Q. And you have played that game on the Wii console,     |
| 25 | correct?   |
|    | 868  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Yes, I have played it on the Wii.                   |
| 2  | Q. And to play that game on the Wii, you use the Wii   |
| 3  | Remote connected to the Wii Nunchuk, correct?          |
| 4  | A. That's correct.                                     |
| 5  | Q. You cannot play Zelda: Twilight Princess with the   |
| 6  | Wii Classic Controller, can you?                       |
| 7  | A. That is correct.                                    |
| 8  | Q. And you consider Zelda: Twilight Princess to be a   |
| 9  | complex game, right?                                   |
| 10 | A. Yes, I do.  |
| 11 | Q. Are you familiar with the N64 controller by         |
| 12 | Nintendo?  |
| 13 | A. Yes. It's a Nintendo product; so, I know about it.  |
| 14 | Q. Do you know what I mean by the phrase "rumble"?     |
| 15 | A. Yes. I think it means vibration.                    |
| 16 | Q. Yes. That's what I mean is when I say "rumble,"     |
| 17 | is vibration in the controller.                        |
| 18 | When the N64 controller was originally sold,           |
| 19 | it wasn't sold with rumble, or vibration, was it?      |
| 20 | MR. GUNTHER: Lack of foundation, your Honor.           |
| 21 | THE COURT: Overruled.                                  |
| 22 | A. That's correct. It did not have a vibration         |
| 23 | function.  |
| 24 | BY MR. CAWLEY:   |
| 25 | Q. And was vibration later made available to customers |
|    |  |

Г

|    | 869  |
|----|--|
| 1  | who wanted to purchase it separately?                    |
| 2  | A. Yes. The way it worked is there was a game called     |
| 3  | "Star Fox" that involved manipulating a flying machine   |
| 4  | and the decision was made at Nintendo that vibration was |
| 5  | necessary for that game and, so, we sold, as an option,  |
| 6  | a separate vibration pack.                               |
| 7  | Q. And have you heard that referred to as the "Rumble    |
| 8  | Pak"?  |
| 9  | A. Well, I'm sorry to say I don't know if it was ever    |
| 10 | referred to as "Rumble Pak." In Japan we referred to it  |
| 11 | as the "vibration pack."                                 |
| 12 | Q. Okay. Well, I'll be glad to call it "vibration        |
| 13 | pack."   |
| 14 | Isn't it true, Mr. Ikeda, that Nintendo                  |
| 15 | offered the vibration pack for sale in the United States |
| 16 | for the first time in 1997?                              |
| 17 | A. I'm sorry to say I just don't know at what point it   |
| 18 | went on sale in the United States. The reason for that   |
| 19 | is at the time of the development of the Nintendo 64, I  |
| 20 | was still working on development of cartridges for the   |
| 21 | Super NES; and, so, I really didn't have that much       |
| 22 | information about the N64.                               |
| 23 | Q. About how many years after the introduction of the    |
| 24 | N64 was the Rumble Pak made available for sale?          |
| 25 | A. I'm very sorry. I just don't recall that, either.     |
|    |  |

9

|    | 870   |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Okay. Although rumble, or vibration, was not a       |
| 2  | standard feature of the N64 controller, it is standard  |
| 3  | in the GameCube controller, correct?                    |
| 4  | A. That is correct.                                     |
| 5  | Q. And the Wii Remote has a vibration function, too,    |
| 6  | doesn't it?   |
| 7  | A. That is correct.                                     |
| 8  | Q. And it comes standard with the Wii Remote, correct?  |
| 9  | A. Yes. It's included as a standard function.           |
| 10 | Q. How does the vibration feature work in the Wii       |
| 11 | Remote?   |
| 12 | A. It really depends on the game. But, for example,     |
| 13 | with Wii Sports, there's one called "tennis." And when  |
| 14 | you swing the racket and the racket hits the ball, then |
| 15 | it would do such things as vibrate. It's a way of       |
| 16 | illustrating the game.                                  |
| 17 | Q. Okay. What mechanism or machine in the Wii Remote    |
| 18 | causes it to vibrate?                                   |
| 19 | A. There is a coin-type motor inside the controller,    |
| 20 | and there is a weight on that motor. And by means of    |
| 21 | rotating that weight, that's what gives rise to the     |
| 22 | vibration.  |
| 23 | Q. Yes, sir. The Wii Remote has what's called a         |
| 24 | "D-pad," doesn't it, "D" as in "dog"?                   |
| 25 | A. I'm sorry. Could you go into a little more detail    |

|    | 871  |
|----|--|
| 1  | about that?  |
| 2  | Q. Sure. The Wii Remote has a pad that I've heard        |
| 3  | referred to and I'll give you several alternatives       |
| 4  | as a "D-pad" or a "direction pad" or a "cross pad" or a  |
| 5  | "plus key," all the same pad but it's been called all    |
| 6  | those different names.                                   |
| 7  | A. Yes. Now I understand what you're asking about.       |
| 8  | Thank you very much. Yes, it has one.                    |
| 9  | Q. Yes. And it has buttons, too, doesn't it?             |
| 10 | A. Yes, it has buttons.                                  |
| 11 | Q. How many?   |
| 12 | A. Let's see. Buttons. Well, if you include the          |
| 13 | trigger button that's on the backside of the Wii Remote, |
| 14 | then that would be if you're counting buttons used in    |
| 15 | games, that would make seven buttons.                    |
| 16 | Then there's a button for turning on or off              |
| 17 | the power supply. And then on the backside, there is     |
| 18 | another button for synchronizing wireless communication. |
| 19 | So, there is a total of nine buttons on it.              |
| 20 | Q. Thank you. And the Wii Remote also uses an            |
| 21 | accelerometer, correct?                                  |
| 22 | A. Yes. It includes an accelerometer an                  |
| 23 | acceleration sensor.                                     |
| 24 | Q. The accelerometer detects movement of the Remote,     |
| 25 | correct?   |
|    |  |

When you wave the Remote, for example, it 1 Α. Yes. will detect that you have waved it. 2 What is inside the accelerometer that let's it do 3 0. that? 4 An accelerometer is a sensor that measures 5 Α. acceleration. Inside there is a portion that moves. Ιt 6 7 has a weight on it. And then there is a portion that does not move. And, so, there is a sensor that 8 9 indicates or that detects whether or not there has been motion on the part that moves. So, you have a moving 10 11 portion and a nonmoving portion; and they work as a kind of pair or set. 12 And does that pair detect motion in one direction? 13 0. The part that has the weight on it can detect 14 Α. 15 movement up/down, right/left, and forward and back. So, it can detect motion in three directions. 16 17 0. Yes, sir. Thank you. The distance between the probes that you 18 19 described change in response to acceleration, correct? 20 Α. Yes. That's right. 21 THE COURT: Excuse me, counsel, for just a 22 If we start getting into long, technical minute. 23 explanations, could you please ask the witness to break 24 his answers up into smaller parts? I think it will be 25 easier for us all to follow if we break it down just a

873 little bit. We've been going along fine; but if some of 1 these answers start getting fairly long, if he can break 2 3 it up, you can translate, and then he can continue on, I think it would be easier. 4 5 THE INTERPRETER: I would be happy to do that, your Honor. 6 THE COURT: If you would tell him that, 7 please. 8 9 THE WITNESS: I have understood. 10 MR. CAWLEY: Thank you. BY MR. CAWLEY: 11 12 The distance between the two probes in the Q. 13 accelerometer causes a change in the capacitance of the static electricity, correct? 14 15 Α. That's correct. 16 And is this capacitor a sensor? Q. I wouldn't think of each of the individual probes 17 Α. as sensors; but I would think of the assembly, the 18 19 entire unit, as a sensor. 20 0. But I'm asking you, Mr. Ikeda, about the probes and 21 actually the capacitors. Do you understand? 22 I do understand what you're asking, but I just Α. don't consider those parts to be sensors. 23 24 Q. What senses the change in the capacitance of the 25 static electricity caused by the relative movement of

874 the probes? 1 Α. There would be several probes that are detected. 2 3 But what you get as an answer -- that is to say, what 4 you get as output -- there are three outputs. 5 THE COURT: Excuse me. Are you saying there were several "codes" or several "probes" that are 6 7 detected? 8 THE INTERPRETER: That was "probes," your 9 Honor. THE COURT: I'm sorry? 10 11 THE INTERPRETER: "Probes." I'm sorry if I wasn't clear. 12 13 THE COURT: Thank you. BY MR. CAWLEY: 14 15 Mr. Ikeda, isn't it true that one set of capacitors Q. in the accelerometer is used to detect acceleration on 16 the X axis? 17 The X axis can be measured, as well. But at the 18 Α. 19 same time, measurement can take place along the Y and Z 20 axes. 21 Yes, sir. That's my next question. Isn't it true 0. 22 that a different set of capacitors is used to detect acceleration on the Y axis? 23 Yes, different capacitors and probes for the Y 24 Α. 25 axis.

Γ

|    | 875  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. And isn't it true that yet a different set of         |
| 2  | capacitors detect movement on the Z axis?                |
| 3  | A. Well, all of this is being measured with just one     |
| 4  | weight; whereas, the locations of the probes are         |
| 5  | different.   |
| 6  | Q. Okay. I'm not asking you about the weight or the      |
| 7  | probes; I'm asking you, sir, about the capacitors.       |
| 8  | A. In the same manner, there are capacitors that are     |
| 9  | for X, Y, and Z.   |
| 10 | Q. So, there are capacitors that sense movement in the   |
| 11 | X axis, correct?   |
| 12 | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 13 | Q. And there are capacitors that sense movement in the   |
| 14 | Y axis, correct?   |
| 15 | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 16 | Q. Thank you, sir.                                       |
| 17 | A. And there are capacitors for the Z axis, as well.     |
| 18 | Q. Thank you even more. I appreciate that.               |
| 19 | You mentioned that the accelerometer has                 |
| 20 | three outputs, correct?                                  |
| 21 | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 22 | Q. Could these outputs be used by a game designer to     |
| 23 | control objects on the screen?                           |
| 24 | A. It's possible to move objects. However, an            |
| 25 | accelerometer detects acceleration; so, all it can do is |
|    |  |

|    | 070  |
|----|--|
| 1  | detect either a fast or a slow movement over a given   |
| 2  | distance. So, for that reason, if you want to for      |
| 3  | example, like moving a cursor on a personal computer,  |
| 4  | left and right and up and down, that would be a pretty |
| 5  | tough thing to do using the accelerometers in the Wii  |
| 6  | Remote. In order to do that kind of cursor movement,   |
| 7  | there is a function known as the "pointer" that is     |
| 8  | included in the Wii Remote.                            |
| 9  | Q. Thank you. But I'm not really asking you about      |
| 10 | cursor on a screen; so, let me rephrase my question.   |
| 11 | You're familiar with the game Mario Galaxy,            |
| 12 | correct?   |
| 13 | A. Yes, I know about that.                             |
| 14 | Q. Is there a place in that game where the Wii Remote  |
| 15 | can be used to make Mario jump onto a ball and to move |
| 16 | the ball with his feet?                                |
| 17 | A. Yes. Yes, it's as you said.                         |
| 18 | Q. So, the Wii Remote can be used to move Mario and    |
| 19 | the ball, correct?                                     |
| 20 | A. Yes. You can make Mario jump.                       |
| 21 | Q. And the Wii Remote, in addition to sensing movement |
| 22 | in a direction, can also detect tilt, correct?         |
| 23 | A. Tilt, yes, off to the side. It can detect that, as  |
| 24 | well.  |
| 25 | Q. And that's because gravity is a kind of             |
|    |  |

|    | 877  |
|----|--|
| 1  | acceleration, correct?                                   |
| 2  | A. It's done using gravity and also the acceleration     |
| 3  | that the person himself actually applies.                |
| 4  | Q. Now, when the Wii Remote creates the three outputs    |
| 5  | from the accelerometer let me start over again.          |
| 6  | That's not a good question.                              |
| 7  | When the accelerometer creates the three                 |
| 8  | outputs, Nintendo doesn't tell game designers what it    |
| 9  | must do with those outputs, does it?                     |
| 10 | A. No, no. We don't have any requirements.               |
| 11 | Q. So, the game designer may choose to use those three   |
| 12 | outputs in any way the designer wishes, correct?         |
| 13 | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 14 | Q. And those outputs could be used to control the        |
| 15 | movement of people or characters, correct?               |
| 16 | A. As I said before, an accelerometer measures           |
| 17 | acceleration. So, it's not like using a mouse and        |
| 18 | making a precise motion on the screen. But you can use   |
| 19 | it, say, if you want to use it it's not something        |
| 20 | that you can follow a precise movement with; but you can |
| 21 | use it as an instruction to, say, deliver a punch or     |
| 22 | swing a racket or swing a bat.                           |
| 23 | Q. Well, you've already testified, Mr. Ikeda, that in    |
| 24 | Mario Galaxy it can be used to move Mario, correct?      |
| 25 | A. Yes. As I said, if you're having Mario jump,          |
|    |  |

you're applying acceleration in the direction in which 1 2 you want Mario to jump. So --3 0. But you cannot say to Mario, "Okay, I want you to 4 Α. jump exactly a distance that is three times your 5 height." 6 Okay. I thank you for that. But my question was, 7 0. 8 just to make sure we completely understand, then: You 9 agree it is possible for a game designer to use the output of the accelerometer to control a character? 10 11 Α. Well, I may not have a complete understanding of how you're using the word "control"; but you cannot use 12 it in order to make the character move precisely in 13 accordance with the will of the game player -- in 14 15 accordance with his intentions. And the reason for that is an accelerometer 16 can detect the direction in which acceleration takes 17 place, but it cannot determine how much motion. 18 19 Q. You remember in Mario Galaxy, Mr. Ikeda, that once Mario jumps on the ball, he can move the ball in 20 different directions by the player using the Wii Remote 21 22 accel erometer? 23 Α. Yes. That, you can do; and that's because the acceleration that is -- that arises when you slant 24 25 something, it indicates a direction. So, what it's

Γ

|    | 879   |
|----|---|
| 1  | saying is go in a particular direction.                 |
| 2  | Q. Thank you. And I'm not asking you anything about     |
| 3  | the precision of the character's movement. My question  |
| 4  | to you is very simple. Can a game designer choose to    |
| 5  | use the output of the accelerometer to move a character |
| 6  | on the screen?  |
| 7  | A. Yes. You can do a simple motion, like a jump.        |
| 8  | Q. Could a game   |
| 9  | A. You can also indicate to Mario, once he's on the     |
| 10 | ball, which way to go.                                  |
| 11 | Q. Thank you.   |
| 12 | Could the game designer choose to use the               |
| 13 | output of the accelerometer to move objects on the      |
| 14 | screen?   |
| 15 | A. Well, just the way you can move Mario, if you had a  |
| 16 | ball-like character, you could move that ball in the    |
| 17 | same way.   |
| 18 | Q. Could a game designer choose to use the output of    |
| 19 | the accelerometer to change the player's point of view  |
| 20 | on the screen?  |
| 21 | A. I think so.  |
| 22 | Q. Thank you, sir.                                      |
| 23 | Now, you've used a mouse before, haven't you?           |
| 24 | A. Yes, I have.   |
| 25 | Q. And you've used a trackball before?                  |
|    |   |

Γ

|    | 880  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Yes, I have used one.                                 |
| 2  | Q. When you move the trackball, the trackball senses     |
| 3  | rotational movement, correct?                            |
| 4  | A. Yes. The portion that comes into contact with the     |
| 5  | trackball detects rotational movement.                   |
| 6  | Q. However, the cursor or pointer on the screen moves    |
| 7  | linearly, or in a line, in response to the rotational    |
| 8  | movement of the trackball, correct?                      |
| 9  | A. Yes. It moves linearly, but I think what it's         |
| 10 | doing is there is some kind of parameter that is used to |
| 11 | transform or to convert the rotational movement into     |
| 12 | linear movement.   |
| 13 | Q. Yes, sir. So, what you've just said is that when      |
| 14 | you use a trackball with a computer, the rotational      |
| 15 | movement of the trackball is translated into linear      |
| 16 | movement on the computer screen, correct?                |
| 17 | A. That's right.   |
| 18 | Q. Thank you, Mr. Ikeda.                                 |
| 19 | MR. CAWLEY: I'll pass the witness, your                  |
| 20 | Honor.   |
| 21 | THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, we're going             |
| 22 | to go ahead and take a break. I will ask you to be back  |
| 23 | at quarter past.   |
| 24 | (The jury exits the courtroom, 10:57 a.m.)               |
| 25 | THE COURT: We'll be in recess until quarter              |
|    |  |

```
881
1
   past.
2
              (Recess, 10:57 a.m. to 11:20 a.m.)
3
              (Open court, all parties present, jury
   present.)
4
              THE COURT:
                          Counsel?
5
6
              MR. GUNTHER:
                            Thank you, your Honor.
7
                CROSS-EXAMINATION OF AKIO IKEDA
   BY MR. GUNTHER:
8
9
        Mr. Ikeda, I'd like to start out -- Anascape's
   0.
  counsel asked you some questions about what you were
10
11
   doing during the development of the Wii Remote, but I
   want to ask you: What's your position right now at
12
13
   Nintendo?
        I am the group manager of the second development
14
   Α.
15
   group in Nintendo's integrated development department.
        Now, sir, do you speak any English?
16
   Q.
        I can more or less read and write and understand
17
   Α.
   what's said; but when it comes to speaking, I only can
18
19
   say just a few words.
20
              And because I want to be exact in what I say,
   I'm wanting to be able to use my native language when I
21
22
   testify.
23
   Q.
        Thank you.
24
              Now, I want to ask you a few questions about
25
   your background.
                     Where were you born?
```

|    | 882   |
|----|---|
| 1  | A. I was born in Yamaguchi Prefecture in Japan.         |
| 2  | Q. And, sir, how old are you?                           |
| 3  | A. I'm 39.  |
| 4  | Q. And, sir, have you lived in Japan your whole life?   |
| 5  | A. Yes. Ever since I was born, I've lived entirely in   |
| 6  | Japan.  |
| 7  | Q. Have you ever been to the United States before?      |
| 8  | A. Yes. I've been in Los Angeles I've been to Los       |
| 9  | Angeles once, and last year I went to Honolulu.         |
| 10 | Q. Have you ever been to Texas before?                  |
| 11 | A. This is my first trip.                               |
| 12 | Q. So, what do you think of Texas?                      |
| 13 | A. I'm impressed by how green Texas is and how good     |
| 14 | the food is. It seems like a very nice place. Also,     |
| 15 | there is a Nintendo software called Metroid; and I had  |
| 16 | heard that that had been jointly developed by Nintendo  |
| 17 | and with a Texas company. So, in that sense, I had some |
| 18 | notion of Texas.  |
| 19 | Q. Thank you. Now, did you come here from Japan to      |
| 20 | testify in this case?                                   |
| 21 | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 22 | Q. How long did it take you to get here?                |
| 23 | A. From Japan's Narita N-A-R-I-T-A, airport to Houston  |
| 24 | airport, it took 12 hours by plane. Then to come from   |
| 25 | the Houston airport to Lufkin, here, that took about 2  |
|    |   |

|    | 883  |
|----|--|
| 1  | hours by car.  |
| 2  | Q. Now, back in January of this year, you had your       |
| 3  | deposition taken in Japan, correct?                      |
| 4  | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 5  | Q. And that was a deposition that was taken by the       |
| 6  | Anascape lawyers in this case; is that right?            |
| 7  | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 8  | Q. Now, had you ever had your deposition taken before?   |
| 9  | A. No, I never have.                                     |
| 10 | Q. And this may have been covered, but just to make      |
| 11 | sure: Have you ever testified in a trial like this       |
| 12 | before?  |
| 13 | A. No. This is my first time.                            |
| 14 | Q. Can you tell us your educational background?          |
| 15 | A. I attended a Japanese university known as Aoyama,     |
| 16 | A-O-Y-A-M-A, Gakuin, G-A-K-U-I-N; and I graduated from   |
| 17 | the department of electrical and electronic engineering. |
| 18 | Q. What year did you graduate?                           |
| 19 | A. I graduated in March of 1993.                         |
| 20 | Q. And, sir, are you a degreed electrical engineer?      |
| 21 | A. That's correct.                                       |
| 22 | MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, could I just ask                |
| 23 | Mr. Taylor to move the mic a little bit closer to him    |
| 24 | when he's answering? I'm just from standing back         |
| 25 | here, it's a little bit faint.                           |
|    |  |

|    | 884  |
|----|--|
| 1  | THE INTERPRETER: So, you would like to hear              |
| 2  | my answers more loudly?                                  |
| 3  | MR. GUNTHER: If possible, Mr. Taylor.                    |
| 4  | THE WITNESS: All right.                                  |
| 5  | THE COURT: Let me just suggest that you just             |
| 6  | move it back and forth between the two of you. It may    |
| 7  | make it a little easier.                                 |
| 8  | THE INTERPRETER: All right.                              |
| 9  | BY MR. GUNTHER:  |
| 10 | Q. When did you join Nintendo, Mr. Ikeda?                |
| 11 | A. I joined Nintendo in April of 1993.                   |
| 12 | Q. And was that right after you got out of college?      |
| 13 | A. Yes. I joined the company the very next month         |
| 14 | after I graduated.                                       |
| 15 | Q. Thank you.  |
| 16 | Your current position, you've testified, is              |
| 17 | manager of the Development Number 2 group. Can you tell  |
| 18 | us what that does and how many people you supervise      |
| 19 | currently?   |
| 20 | A. Well, first of all, the number in the group,          |
| 21 | including myself, there are 21. As for the work that we  |
| 22 | do, it involves the Wii console, the Remote control, the |
| 23 | Wii Fit. We are involved in the electronic design for    |
| 24 | this and for peripherals, as well.                       |
| 25 | Q. Now, before you were manager of the Development       |

|    | 200  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Group Number 2, what was your responsibilities? What     |
| 2  | did you do at Nintendo?                                  |
| 3  | A. Until July of last year, I was group manager of       |
| 4  | Development Group Number 5 that specializes in the       |
| 5  | design of user interfaces.                               |
| 6  | Q. And, sir, while you were working in that position,    |
| 7  | did you work on the development of the Wii Remote?       |
| 8  | A. Yes. It was in Development Group Number 5 that I      |
| 9  | did development work for the Remote control for the Wii, |
| 10 | the Wii Classic, and the Wii Nunchuk.                    |
| 11 | Q. What were your general responsibilities while you     |
| 12 | were doing that design and development work for the Wii  |
| 13 | controllers?   |
| 14 | A. They were various functions. One would have been,     |
| 15 | say, the accelerometer sensor, that portion; then the    |
| 16 | wireless. That would be Bluetooth. All of these          |
| 17 | various functions, there was someone actually working on |
| 18 | that, handling the work. I was managing that work and    |
| 19 | ensuring its progress; but at the same time, there was   |
| 20 | some actual development work that I handled myself in    |
| 21 | addition to my management work.                          |
| 22 | Q. Now, sir, are you a named inventor on any patents     |
| 23 | as a result of your work at Nintendo?                    |
| 24 | A. Yes, I am.  |
| 25 | Q. And can you tell us approximately how many patents    |
|    |  |

886 you've been named as an inventor on based on your work 1 2 at Nintendo? 3 Α. Including applications filed in the United States, it would be approximately eight patents. 4 5 0. Thank you. 6 Now, sir, were you involved -- what was the 7 first time that you were involved in the development of a video game that involved an accelerometer? 8 9 The first time I was involved in a game that had Α. anything to do with an accelerometer was in developing a 10 11 Game Boy cartridge called "Tilt 'n Tumble," Kirby. 12 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, may I approach with a demonstrative exhibit? 13 14 THE COURT: All right. You may approach. 15 MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, your Honor. BY MR. GUNTHER: 16 Mr. Ikeda, I've handed you two objects. Can you 17 0. tell us what they are? 18 19 Α. This is a Game Boy Advance SP. 20 And what we have, this pink item here, this 21 is the Kirby Tilt 'n Tumble cartridge (indicating). And it may be a little hard to make out; but here up in the 22 23 top, there is an accelerometer built in. 24 Q. When did you work on the development of that 25 cartridge?

| 1  | A. It was around 1999. There was a planning meeting,     |
|----|--|
| 2  | and the purpose of the planning meeting was to decide    |
| 3  | whether or not we could do a combination of a Game Boy   |
| 4  | cartridge with a certain kind or kinds of sensor to come |
| 5  | up with something that was particularly enjoyable. And   |
| 6  | at that meeting someone proposed that an accelerometer   |
| 7  | be combined with a Game Boy cartridge; and, so, I became |
| 8  | involved in the work of doing that combination. I was    |
| 9  | chosen to be the main person to handle this design work. |
| 10 | Q. And, sir, the cartridge that you have in your hand,   |
| 11 | is that meant to fit into the Game Boy system?           |
| 12 | A. Yes. The way you use this cartridge, you push         |
| 13 | it you insert it (demonstrating) into the Game Boy       |
| 14 | Advance.   |
| 15 | Q. And then can you describe for us we're not going      |
| 16 | to actually show the game, but can you describe for us   |
| 17 | how that game works and how the accelerometer            |
| 18 | contributes to the play of the game?                     |
| 19 | A. Well, there's a character named "Kirby" who appears   |
| 20 | in this game. He's round, a rather ball-like character.  |
| 21 | And if you take the console of the Game Boy              |
| 22 | Advance and you tilt it, then this round Kirby           |
| 23 | character, he will roll in that direction like a ball.   |
| 24 | I'll just show you (demonstrating). I'll                 |
| 25 | give you an example of just what sort of action that     |

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

| <pre>A be. You operate it like this (demonstrating).<br/>Now, when you were operating the Game Boy with the<br/>cartridge in it, were you pressing buttons to make<br/>irby character move around?<br/>Well, if you you had to push a button, for<br/>ele, to start the game or something like that. But<br/>ictually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br/>urning.</pre> |
|--|
| Now, when you were operating the Game Boy with the<br>cartridge in it, were you pressing buttons to make<br>irby character move around?<br>Well, if you you had to push a button, for<br>le, to start the game or something like that. But<br>ctually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br>urning.  |
| cartridge in it, were you pressing buttons to make<br>Trby character move around?<br>Well, if you you had to push a button, for<br>ole, to start the game or something like that. But<br>actually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br>urning.  |
| Kirby character move around?<br>Well, if you you had to push a button, for<br>ole, to start the game or something like that. But<br>actually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br>urning.   |
| Well, if you you had to push a button, for<br>ole, to start the game or something like that. But<br>actually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br>urning.   |
| ole, to start the game or something like that. But<br>actually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br>furning.  |
| ctually moving Kirby, you did that only by tilting<br>urning.  |
| urning.  |
|  |
| And, sir, can you tell us how the accelerometer  |
| red into what you would see on the screen in terms   |
| e movement of the ball-like Kirby character?   |
| When the player tilts the Game Boy, as a result of   |
| tilting, an acceleration is generated. What the  |
| erometer does is detect the direction in which the   |
| took place, and it sends a signal to the console of  |
| ame Boy Advance. By tilting the Game Boy Advance   |
| le right, left, forward, and back, what you have in  |
| is an accelerometer that detects on two axes.  |
| Okay. Sir, where did the accelerometer that's  |
| e Kirby Tilt 'n Tumble cartridge, is that made by  |
| ndo?   |
| No. Nintendo doesn't manufacture it. We purchase   |
| part from a U.S. company called "Analog Devices."  |
| Now, sir, was the idea of putting the accelerometer  |
| the Kirby Tilt 'n Tumble cartridge was that an   |
| ) (   (   (   (   (   (   (   (   (   (  |

Г

|    | 88   |
|----|--|
| 1  | idea that came from Analog Devices?                    |
| 2  | A. No. The idea of putting an accelerometer into the   |
| 3  | cartridge, that was a Nintendo idea.                   |
| 4  | Q. Had any company, to your knowledge, ever done       |
| 5  | anything like that before, any video game company?     |
| 6  | A. I certainly don't know anything that was out as a   |
| 7  | product like that.                                     |
| 8  | Q. Thank you.  |
| 9  | Now, sir, I want to talk for a moment about            |
| 10 | the Nintendo 64. You were asked some questions about   |
| 11 | that system by Anascape's counsel.                     |
| 12 | A. All right.  |
| 13 | Q. Now, sir, are you familiar with the Nintendo 64     |
| 14 | system?  |
| 15 | A. Yes. I have used the Nintendo product.              |
| 16 | Q. What kind of graphics does the Nintendo 64 have?    |
| 17 | A. These are characters that are displayed on the      |
| 18 | television screen. What's distinctive about it is that |
| 19 | these are characters that appear to have depth.        |
| 20 | Q. And when you say they appear to have depth, are     |
| 21 | they 2-D characters or are they 3-D characters or      |
| 22 | something else?  |
| 23 | A. The general way of referring to them would be to    |
| 24 | say that these are 3-D graphics.                       |
| 25 | Q. Now, sir, I'm holding this device up. Do you know   |
|    |  |

9

890 what this is? 1 2 Α. Yes. What you have in your hand is a Nintendo 64 3 controller. And is that a 3-D graphics controller, Mr. Ikeda? 4 Q. 5 I think it is a controller for operating Α. three-dimensional characters. 6 7 0. Thank you. 8 Now, sir, are you familiar with the game Nintendo Super Mario 64? 9 Yes. I've played with it just a little. 10 Α. 11 Q. Okay. 12 MR. GUNTHER: With your Honor's permission, we would like to ask Mr. Ikeda to make a short 13 demonstration of the Nintendo 64 3-D video game with the 14 Super Mario 64. 15 THE COURT: All right. 16 BY MR. GUNTHER: 17 Mr. Ikeda, I'm going to ask you, if you can, to 18 Q. step down towards me. We have a game set up, and we're 19 20 going to ask you to play just a little bit of Super Mario 64 on the Nintendo 64 system. 21 22 Α. May I step forward? 23 Q. Yes. MR. GUNTHER: Is that okay, your Honor? 24 25 THE COURT: Yes.

891 MR. GUNTHER: Thank you. 1 2 Mr. Taylor, do you want to turn on the 3 mi crophone? THE INTERPRETER: 4 I see. 5 MR. GUNTHER: I think there is a switch on there. You might have to take it out. 6 7 BY MR. GUNTHER: Mr. Ikeda, can you actually start the game? And if 8 0. 9 you could demonstrate and maybe talk a little bit, as you're playing, about what you're doing. 10 11 THE COURT: Stop one minute. 12 MR. GUNTHER: Yes, sir. 13 I think you're going to need to THE COURT: stand a little closer because he's going to need to talk 14 15 into the microphone, also. Or else you're going to have to move off to the podium so he can talk into the 16 microphone. One way or the other, Mr. Ikeda and the 17 interpreter have to have access to a microphone. 18 19 MR. GUNTHER: Understood, your Honor. What I will do is I'm going to give him this microphone; and to 20 the extent I have to ask a question, I will talk really 21 22 loud. 23 THE COURT: Or you can bend it back towards yourself. 24 25 Why don't you bend it towards him now.

|    | 892   |
|----|---|
| 1  | MR. GUNTHER: Yes, sir.                                  |
| 2  | A. I will explain using this microphone. I'd like to    |
| 3  | start the game right away.                              |
| 4  | BY MR. GUNTHER:   |
| 5  | Q. Are you controlling the game right now?              |
| 6  | A. No. I'm not yet operating it.                        |
| 7  | Q. Tell us when you actually start to operate the       |
| 8  | game.   |
| 9  | A. Now I've started operating Mario. I'm using the      |
| 10 | analog stick on this controller to go left and to go    |
| 11 | right. There appears to be a castle up ahead; so, I'm   |
| 12 | going in that direction. The way I'm doing that, I'm    |
| 13 | moving forward by taking this analog stick and pressing |
| 14 | it forward.   |
| 15 | Q. Now, let me ask you: Is this a 2-D game or a 3-D     |
| 16 | game, this Mario 64?                                    |
| 17 | A. I think it's a 3-D game.                             |
| 18 | Q. Why do you say that?                                 |
| 19 | A. Well, for example, when I go up the stairs and       |
| 20 | here I'm by the banister. By moving the camera angle, I |
| 21 | can look at it from different points of view.           |
| 22 | Also, I can move in towards the depth of                |
| 23 | what's on the screen; or I can move back out towards    |
| 24 | out of the screen.                                      |
| 25 | Q. When you change the camera angle, what features on   |
|    |   |

893 the controller do you use to do that? 1 I'll show you now (indicating). I use the yellow 2 Α. 3 buttons here to change the angle, the camera angle, and 4 to zoom in or zoom out. 5 Here where you have this sort of 3-D effect, it's tricky to actually get on there; and, so, I'm going 6 to change the angle to make it easier. Uh-oh. 7 failed. 8 9 Just show us just a little bit more of the game to 0. get the idea of the 3-D nature of the game, please. 10 11 Α. Well, then I'll just continue playing the game 12 here. 13 Okay, Mr. Ikeda. Thank you very much for that. 0. 14 I have one more question just on this game 15 and this system, the Nintendo 64 system. In terms of time, was this system out before or after --16 17 MR. CAWLEY: Your Honor, this is precisely the matter that your Honor ruled on at the beginning of 18 19 the trial in relation to the revision of certain demonstratives. 20 THE COURT: Sustained. 21 BY MR. GUNTHER: 22 23 Q. Mr. Ikeda, why don't you retake the witness stand, if you could. 24 25 MR. GUNTHER: And for the record, while the

|    | 894   |
|----|---|
| 1  | interpreter is getting seated, the exhibits that we've  |
| 2  | been using, the Wii console sorry the Nintendo 64       |
| 3  | controller is Defendant's Exhibit 118. The Nintendo 64  |
| 4  | console is Defendant's Exhibit 120. And the Super Mario |
| 5  | 64 cartridge is Defendant's Exhibit 121.                |
| 6  | BY MR. GUNTHER:   |
| 7  | Q. If I could turn back to the Wii controllers,         |
| 8  | Mr. Ikeda.  |
| 9  | Now, sir, you understand that the reason                |
| 10 | we're here is that Anascape is accusing the Wii Remote, |
| 11 | when used with either the Wii Nunchuk or the Wii        |
| 12 | Classic, of infringing Mr. Armstrong's '700 patent; is  |
| 13 | that correct?   |
| 14 | A. Yes, I understand that.                              |
| 15 | Q. Now, sir, during the time that you were developing   |
| 16 | the Wii Remote, had you ever heard of Mr. Brad          |
| 17 | Armstrong?  |
| 18 | A. No, I had not.                                       |
| 19 | Q. Had you ever met him before?                         |
| 20 | A. No.  |
| 21 | Q. Do you know whether he's here in this courtroom?     |
| 22 | A. No, I don't know.                                    |
| 23 | Q. Now, sir, had you ever heard of Mr. Armstrong's      |
| 24 | '700 patent anytime before this lawsuit was filed?      |
| 25 | A. No, I had not.                                       |

|    | 895   |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Did you use anything from Mr. Armstrong's '700       |
| 2  | patent while you were developing any of the Wii         |
| 3  | controllers?  |
| 4  | A. No. Not in any controller.                           |
| 5  | Q. To your knowledge, did anyone on the team that was   |
| 6  | working with you in developing the Wii Remote, the Wii  |
| 7  | Nunchuk, and the Wii Classic Controllers use anything   |
| 8  | from Mr. Armstrong's '700 patent?                       |
| 9  | A. No. I don't think that happened.                     |
| 10 | Q. Now, sir, can you tell me how you got involved in    |
| 11 | developing the Wii controllers and specifically the Wii |
| 12 | Remote?   |
| 13 | A. First of all, it was in May of 2003 that I moved to  |
| 14 | the department where I now find myself; that is to say, |
| 15 | the integrated research department.                     |
| 16 | Within that department, a user interface                |
| 17 | planning team was established; and I was chosen as a    |
| 18 | member of that team. Then a Wii user interface planning |
| 19 | team was put together, and ideas were exchanged within  |
| 20 | that team. Within that team, I came up with a number of |
| 21 | different ideas for controllers; and I was made the     |
| 22 | leader of that planning team. And later on, by          |
| 23 | combining pointer technology with accelerometers, I was |
| 24 | able to achieve the kind of control that is used in the |
| 25 | Wii Remote control.                                     |

Γ

| 896  |
|--|
| Q. Let me just ask you this, because I want to make      |
| sure that we're clear on this. Who at Nintendo had the   |
| idea of putting an accelerometer in the Wii Remote?      |
| A. I was the one who pushed that idea.                   |
| Q. Now, sir, let me, if I can                            |
| MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, may I approach?                 |
| THE COURT: You may.                                      |
| BY MR. GUNTHER:  |
| Q. I'm handing you a Wii Remote.                         |
| A. Yes.  |
| Q. Are there any other features in the Wii Remote that   |
| you were primarily responsible for, in terms of the      |
| i dea?   |
| A. I was the one who found the pointer technology.       |
| Q. And, sir, can you tell us what you mean by "the       |
| pointer technology" and show us where that is resident   |
| in the Wii Remote?                                       |
| A. The pointer is actually mounted right here            |
| (indicating), at the end of right here in the end.       |
| Q. l'm sorry. Could you                                  |
| A. As for the functions of the pointer, there is a       |
| kind of camera contained here (indicating). However,     |
| it's not like your ordinary digital camera that can take |
| pretty pictures. This is a camera that can is            |
| sensitive only to certain kinds of light.                |
|  |

|    | 897   |
|----|---|
| 1  | The way it works is on the Wii itself,                  |
| 2  | there's something called a "sensor bar"; and the sensor |
| 3  | bar on the Wii gives off light. And this what           |
| 4  | happens here is about 200 times a second, this detects  |
| 5  | the light that's given off by the sensor bar.           |
| 6  | And wireless technology is used to convey to            |
| 7  | the Wii from what angle that light is being detected    |
| 8  | here in the Remote control.                             |
| 9  | Q. Now, sir, I'm going to hold something up; and I      |
| 10 | would ask you to identify it for the jury.              |
| 11 | A. On either side of the sensor bar, there is a         |
| 12 | special lamp, an infrared lamp that emits a particular  |
| 13 | kind of light.  |
| 14 | Q. So, what I just held up was the sensor bar?          |
| 15 | A. That's right.  |
| 16 | Q. And the pointer that you've been talking about,      |
| 17 | that interacts with the sensor bar? Is that your        |
| 18 | testimony?  |
| 19 | A. The way it works is the pointer here, which is like  |
| 20 | a camera, it detects or it captures the light from the  |
| 21 | sensor bar. Without the sensor bar, the pointer         |
| 22 | function cannot be used.                                |
| 23 | Q. And, sir, is the pointer you've described it as      |
| 24 | a camera. Is it actually taking pictures of the sensor  |
| 25 | bar?  |
|    |   |

A. No, it's not taking pictures. What it's doing is
 detecting the location where there is light, the places
 where there is light.

4 Q. Thank you.

Now I want to go back to the accelerometer that you talked about that was your idea to include in the Wii Remote. How did you come up with the idea for including the accelerometer in the Wii Remote?

9 Α. As I said before, I had handled the design of the 10 Kirby cartridge. You can operate the game by tilting 11 the Game Boy; but I didn't like the fact that when you tilt that, also the LCD screen gets tilted at the same 12 13 So, the idea that I had was to have a screen, time. maybe a big screen like a television, that did not move 14 15 and then have the controller with an accelerometer in it separate from that. And I thought by that means, a new 16 kind of game could be developed. 17

18 Q. Now, sir, after you came up with the idea for
19 including the accelerometer in a controller, what did
20 you do next? After you had the idea, what was your next
21 step?

A. In the case of an acceleration sensor, it wasn't
very good at detecting particular distance traveled.
What it was particularly good for was determining how
quickly or how slowly something had taken place. For

|    | 660  |
|----|--|
| 1  | that reason, I thought it would be necessary to combine  |
| 2  | it with a device that could be used for choosing from    |
| 3  | menus or for precise control of characters. And those    |
| 4  | things would be the cross key and the pointer.           |
| 5  | Q. Now, sir, did you build a prototype at some point     |
| 6  | of your idea?  |
| 7  | A. Yes. I made several types of prototype.               |
| 8  | Q. And, sir, what did you do with the prototype, or      |
| 9  | prototypes, after you made them; that is, the ones that  |
| 10 | had your idea of an accelerometer and a pointer?         |
| 11 | A. It was in May of 2005 that I made a presentation to   |
| 12 | my bosses, Managing Director Takeda, T-A-K-E-D-A, who is |
| 13 | in charge of hardware development, and also a            |
| 14 | presentation to Managing Director Miyamoto               |
| 15 | M-I-Y-A-M-O-T-O, who is in charge of applications        |
| 16 | development.   |
| 17 | After that, Managing Director Miyamoto, he               |
| 18 | liked what he saw; and he gave instructions for this     |
| 19 | idea to be demonstrated and shown to the various         |
| 20 | application teams.                                       |
| 21 | Q. And after that, sir, did you actually start           |
| 22 | developing what became the Wii Remote?                   |
| 23 | A. At that point a prototype had been put together;      |
| 24 | and, so, we developed we went into the actual styling    |
| 25 | of what turned out to be the Remote control in an        |
|    |  |

|    | 900  |
|----|--|
| 1  | accelerated way from that point.                         |
| 2  | Q. Now, sir, starting from the point in time when you    |
| 3  | first had your idea of including an accelerometer and a  |
| 4  | pointer in a video game controller, from that point to   |
| 5  | the point that you actually finished the development     |
| 6  | work on the Wii Remote, how long did it take?            |
| 7  | A. Well, let me see. From actually having the concept    |
| 8  | to the point where product is actually being             |
| 9  | manufactured, I think that would be two to three years.  |
| 10 | Q. And, sir, during that two to three-year period, how   |
| 11 | many people worked under your direction to develop what  |
| 12 | became the Wii Remote?                                   |
| 13 | A. It would be hard to give you a specific number, but   |
| 14 | there were people who were involved in the actual        |
| 15 | styling of the Remote control. There were people who     |
| 16 | were involved in the actual mechanical aspects of it.    |
| 17 | Also, there were people who were involved in coming up   |
| 18 | with software for evaluating the Remote control. So, I   |
| 19 | would say there were at least several dozen people, some |
| 20 | dozens of people.  |
| 21 | Q. Now, sir, let me ask you this question: Was it        |
| 22 | easy for you and the rest of the people at Nintendo      |
| 23 | working on the development of this product to develop    |
| 24 | the Wii Remote? Was it really kind of an easy            |
| 25 | development project?                                     |

I agonized quite a lot over this before it 1 Α. No. 2 actually took the appearance that we see here. My staff 3 also -- I must say they agonized considerably over it, too. 4 5 Now, sir, the Wii Remote uses an accelerometer 0. that's purchased from Analog Devices, that same U.S. 6 company, right? 7 That's correct. 8 Α. 9 And we had some testimony yesterday, but let me ask 0. Was it just a simple matter of buying an 10 you this: 11 off-the-shelf accelerometer part from Analog Devices and slapping it into a controller? Is that all that was 12 involved in developing the Wii Remote? 13 The analog devices accelerometers that we had 14 No. Α. 15 been using up until that point had only two axes. However, the Wii Remote control ended up taking the form 16 that it did; and it was one that could be held this way 17 or that way (demonstrating) or waved around. 18 And, so, 19 we proposed to Analog Devices that they come up with a 20 new product that had three axes. So, is it your testimony -- I just want to be clear 21 0. 22 Is it your testimony that it was Nintendo's on this. idea given to the Analog Devices to come up with a 23 three-axis accelerometer? 24 25 What we wanted from Analog Devices was a three-axis Α.

accelerometer or acceleration sensor. As for how the 1 sensor was going to work, the structure of the thing 2 3 itself, that was going to be up to Analog Devices. All right. Counsel, we're going 4 THE COURT: to go ahead and break for lunch. 5 Ladies and gentlemen, I'll ask you to be back 6 7 at 1:30. Of course, please remember my instructions. 8 Don't discuss the case, and don't let anybody talk to 9 you about it. 10 (The jury exits the courtroom, 12:15 p.m.) 11 THE COURT: I've taken a look at these other two objections, one dealing with Mr. Fiorito and one 12 dealing with Mr. Pederson. Now, inequitable conduct is 13 not going to the jury; so, what's the purpose of 14 15 Mr. Fiorito? MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, he would be our 16 witness as a comparable witness to the plaintiff's 17 expert, Mr. Newman, on patent procedures and what 18 19 actually transpired in the file histories of this case, 20 to help the jury understand the contents of the file 21 history, to a limited degree; and it's in rebuttal to 22 Mr. Newman testifying. 23 The parties actually -- we had actually 24 proposed to the other side that neither party call 25 patent law experts in this part of the trial and save it

for the bench trial, but they didn't want to agree with 1 And they called Newman; so, it's our position 2 that. that we would like to call Mr. Fiorito. 3 4 I think the main issue, your Honor --5 unfortunately, the Microsoft settlement was somewhat of 6 a surprise to us and -- but I think the only technicality, if I can call it that, is that Microsoft 7 8 was going to take the lead on putting Mr. Fiorito on 9 outside the bench trial, in this trial, on behalf of 10 both Nintendo and Microsoft; and that's indicated on 11 Microsoft's witness list, indicated that he will be put 12 on as Nintendo's and Microsoft's expert. 13 On our list, we were going to take charge of 14 Fiorito in connection with the inequitable conduct bench 15 trial. And we still intend to do that, of course; but now, with the sudden departure of Microsoft, we would 16 respectfully request the court to allow us to put on 17 Mr. Fiorito as was planned with Microsoft taking the 18 lead on that. 19 20 That happened -- the Microsoft settlement we 21 really had little or no warning on, basically the night 22 before the pretrial conference. But a week ago we had 23 talked to the other -- to plaintiff's counsel about not calling anybody in the case-in-chief, and they knew 24 25 Microsoft was going to call Mr. Fiorito on behalf of
both of us. So, I can't imagine that there could really 1 2 be any prejudice. 3 Under the agreement, we identified Mr. Fiorito yesterday by 9:00 a.m., as we're supposed to 4 do with witnesses. If there is, in fact -- if there was 5 some misunderstanding with the plaintiff that because of 6 the witness list, that they actually had a confusion --7 8 which I find hard to believe. But if there was, one 9 other thing I would mention is he doubtfully would go on until Monday, which would certainly give them even just 10 11 four days from now having notice that he would be testifying very briefly on certain issues in rebuttal to 12 13 Mr. Newman's testimony. THE COURT: Well, I guess my first thought 14 15 is -- and I think I even had a note going to Ms. Chen --16 what on earth was he doing --17 What was his name, the one you had? MR. CAWLEY: Mr. Newman. 18 19 THE COURT: Mr. Newman. 20 -- why was he on the stand in the first place, and why didn't anybody object to him. 21 Generally 22 I don't allow testimony about what goes on in the PTO 23 because I regard that normally as a collateral attack or 24 collateral bolstering of what goes on in the PTO. The 25 jury gets -- but there was no objection to him; so -- it

is not my job to interfere. 1 2 But now you want to bring in someone to bring 3 up what? You say a few issues. Basically he gave what I saw as a fairly -- in fact, I guess it was you who 4 cross-examined him and gave him the exact reference to 5 6 the regulations; so, what --7 MR. PRESTA: Correct, your Honor. 8 THE COURT: What are you going to bring up 9 now, someone else to say, "Yep, those are the regulations"? 10 11 MR. PRESTA: Well, your Honor, it's actually a little bit more than that. He raised the issue of 12 what is a continuation and a continuation-in-part, and I 13 didn't go into all the great details. I just kept the 14 15 cross relative to what --THE COURT: Now, wait a minute. He raised 16 the issue, or you asked him about it? 17 18 And this is a continuation. I'm not going to 19 get the jury confused about continuations and 20 continuation-in-part and should the PTO have made it a continuation-in-part or -- I mean, that's -- that, 21 22 again, is, in my mind, a collateral attack on the PTO. This is a continuation. 23 24 They're going to be carefully instructed that 25 they have to go ahead and compare the claim back to the

906 original application to be sure that each and every 1 2 element is disclosed. But --MR. PRESTA: 3 Yes. 4 THE COURT: -- to try to bring in someone and say, "Well, gee, this should have been a 5 continuation-in-part" or "Maybe the PTO wasn't careful 6 enough" or -- I mean, what are you trying --7 MR. PRESTA: 8 Yes. 9 THE COURT: -- to bring out with this that is 10 going to add anything to the trial? 11 MR. PRESTA: I understand your concern, your Now, first of all, it is an important issue; and 12 Honor. I'm glad I have a chance to explain it to you because 13 from our perspective, the Patent Office, under the 14 15 rules, doesn't look to make a determination whether 16 something is really a continuation or a continuation-in-part. Mr. Armstrong filed the case as a 17 continuation-in-part and he unilaterally changed it 18 19 himself to a continuation and that's the way he amended it, so it read "continuation." 20 How does that help the jury in --21 THE COURT: 22 MR. PRESTA: Yes. 23 THE COURT: -- making a decision on this case, what the PTO did, what he called it the first 24 25 time, how he changed it, how it was finally issued? Τ

907 mean, you're the one who brought up the regulation and 1 it was continuation-in-part and so forth. 2 3 As I said before, I would have probably sustained an objection to him in the first place; but 4 it's not my place to suggest --5 MR. PRESTA: 6 Yes. 7 THE COURT: -- things. So, what are you 8 going to add to this trial? I mean, under 403, I 9 don't -- you know, I've got to be concerned about misleading the jury and the danger of confusion; and I 10 11 don't see anything at all -- I mean, tell me what he's 12 going to say that --13 MR. PRESTA: Yes. THE COURT: -- is going to be anything more 14 15 than, "Yep, that's the regulation; and here's what it 16 says." 17 Okay, your Honor. It is -- our MR. PRESTA: proposal is that he would -- nobody in this case so far 18 19 has helped the jury -- or has taken the jury through the 20 prosecution history of the case. That is a very important aspect of understanding what transpired in 21 22 connection with getting the patent, but that's been completely absent from this case. 23 24 It seemed as though the file history just at 25 the moment, without this type of an expert, is just

908 going to go to the jury with no explanation of what it 1 is or what it means. 2 3 THE COURT: You mean you're going to start 4 going through page by page? 5 MR. PRESTA: Not at all. Not at all, your Honor. We just --6 7 THE COURT: I mean, what is it that he's going to give expert testimony on -- that he's qualified 8 9 to give expert testimony on as to what is in the record? I mean, are you going to have an expert say, "Well, 10 11 here's what the patent examiner said and, with my crystal ball as an expert, this is what he meant"? 12 No, your Honor. He would be 13 MR. PRESTA: 14 very careful. He would never testify what the examiner 15 meant or what the applicant meant. Our goal --16 THE COURT: Tell me why you need an expert -and I'm not trying to be facetious; but, I mean, I tried 17 a lot of cases myself before I became a judge and -- I 18 19 mean, let's get right to it. What is the point of this --20 21 MR. PRESTA: Yes. 22 THE COURT: -- this witness as an expert 23 witness? 24 MR. PRESTA: To help the jury understand what 25 transpired from the 1996 application in the PTO filing

| through and till the '700 patent issued, actually what   |
|--|
| was filed and what was what papers were filed, how       |
| the application was changed, not what the examiners      |
| thought about it, not what Mr. Armstrong thought about   |
| it, just the factual record of what changes occurred in  |
| the 1996 application when it was filed as to the '700    |
| application, which is a critical issue in this case.     |
| Also going to explain that, in fact, the case            |
| was originally filed with all of those changes as a      |
| continuation-in-part application, which is a recognition |
| by Mr. Armstrong that, in fact, new matter was being     |
| added. And it continued for several years being a        |
| continuation-in-part application. That a                 |
| continuation-in-part application is something that is    |
| different than a continuation.                           |
| And the idea that the plaintiff is going to              |
| suggest that because it's a continuation, that somehow   |
| the Patent Office has endorsed the idea that no changes  |
| were made is our big concern. It sounded like            |
| your Honor was going to instruct the jury possibly that  |
| it is a continuation, and I don't want it to be          |
| THE COURT: I'm not going to instruct them.               |
| I'm just wondering why we're bringing up this issue.     |
| This may have all been very relevant to claim            |
| construction, and I can I'm, obviously, when I'm         |
|  |

|    | 91   |
|----|--|
| 1  | construing the claims, supposed to construe them in      |
| 2  | light of the specification and the prosecution history   |
| 3  | if it is in evidence. But and, obviously, if there       |
| 4  | is some point in there about prior art or something like |
| 5  | that that goes to invalidity, that's one thing. But      |
| 6  | MR. PRESTA: Yes.   |
| 7  | THE COURT: this idea that I mean, tell                   |
| 8  | me   |
| 9  | MR. PRESTA: Yes.   |
| 10 | THE COURT: Show me some piece of authority,              |
| 11 | some case and I've said many times I have not read       |
| 12 | every single patent case nor have I memorized them       |
| 13 | that indicates the jury should do anything other than    |
| 14 | take that claim and then compare it against the original |
| 15 | application and ensure or read it to see if or           |
| 16 | compare it to see if every element disclosed in that     |
| 17 | claim is, in fact, disclosed or taught in that claim     |
| 18 | is disclosed in that original application.               |
| 19 | MR. PRESTA: Yes.   |
| 20 | THE COURT: Why is it at all relevant other               |
| 21 | than confusing and to start throwing around words like   |
| 22 | "continuation" or "continuation-in-part" or what people  |
| 23 | thought in the middle there?                             |
| 24 | MR. PRESTA: Well, your Honor, the plaintiffs             |
| 25 | in their opening they are relying on the fact that       |
|    |  |

|    | 91   |
|----|--|
| 1  | this is a continuation. We need to have some way to    |
| 2  | rebut the fact that it is truly the Patent Office      |
| 3  | doesn't make that determination. All of us if we       |
| 4  | wanted priority in patent applications, we would just  |
| 5  | write "continuation" on it and we would get priority,  |
| 6  | but it's not that simple.                              |
| 7  | THE COURT: That's right. It's not that                 |
| 8  | simple. The jury compares one with the other, and      |
| 9  | they're going to be instructed as to that. So          |
| 10 | MR. PRESTA: Yes.                                       |
| 11 | THE COURT: again, what is the purpose of               |
| 12 | going through some lengthy witness or even some short  |
| 13 | witness to try to throw up a little extra smoke as to, |
| 14 | "Gee, maybe somebody should have called this something |
| 15 | el se"?  |
| 16 | MR. PRESTA: Well, your Honor                           |
| 17 | THE COURT: It's not what it's called; it's             |
| 18 | what it is.  |
| 19 | MR. PRESTA: Your Honor                                 |
| 20 | THE COURT: And, in fact, it's supposed to be           |
| 21 | an examination of the claim words or claim language    |
| 22 | with what is in the application.                       |
| 23 | MR. PRESTA: Yes.                                       |
| 24 | THE COURT: It's not supposed to be an                  |
| 25 | examination of what was in the inventor's mind. I      |
|    |  |

911

1 mean --2 MR. PRESTA: Yes, I --3 THE COURT: As far as I know, he could have been crazy; and so could the PTO examiner. 4 Nobody even 5 looks at that. MR. PRESTA: 6 We understand. It certainly is not something that we would go to anybody's mental state 7 8 or anybody's thinking. It's the factual record. 9 And there's actually one thing that I want to explain at this point because it's, obviously, an issue 10 11 now. We talked earlier -- there was a ruling that you had made about burdens of proof in connection with 12 whether something has priority and it came up under one 13 of the new cases that had come out and you made a 14 15 ruling --THE COURT: Power Oasis. 16 17 MR. PRESTA: Yes, Power Oasis, your Honor. Now, we believe there is a legal issue that 18 is going to potentially come up here that --19 20 What issue is that? THE COURT: 21 MR. PRESTA: There is a legal issue of 22 whether this is, in fact, a continuation or a continuation-in-part. 23 THE COURT: And what on earth would we have 24 25 the jury deciding a legal issue for? Why isn't that

1 just presented to me?

25

2 MR. PRESTA: Well, it is something that we 3 believe, in trying to study and understand that case law, that it is probably something that you have to 4 And it is something that -- on the other hand, 5 decide. it is also relevant to the jury to see the changes that 6 were made from the 1996 to the '700 application. 7 Those changes that were made -- a patent law expert like 8 9 Mr. Fiorito, who has analyzed those in his expert report, is eminently qualified to explain the changes 10 11 that were made in the applications. We don't have a witness really that can get up there and explain the 12 13 changes that occurred between the 1996 and the '700 filing; and that is something that, you know, we think 14 15 would be useful for the jury to see, not a smokescreen. It's actually just the facts, not what Mr. Armstrong is 16 thinking, not what the examiner is thinking, but the 17 facts of what the changes were. 18

We don't have a witness that can actually do that that would be appropriate. We felt that that was appropriate for Mr. Fiorito to do, without, of course -he is a professional. He's not going to testify to anything about the examiner's intent, the lack of the PTO's ability to do anything.

We understand your court's orders and your

concerns about those type of issues. But essential to 1 2 this case is the fact that there were changes made and 3 developing the fact that when those changes were made --4 THE COURT: Well, let me -- I'll state for the record right now -- and I have to give an 5 instruction to the jury. It seems very clear to the 6 court that one of the inferences Mr. Gunther was trying 7 8 to raise is that if new claims are written, that's a 9 change; and, therefore, that is outside the scope of the 1996 application. And that's just a flat false 10 11 statement of the law, and you know it. MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor --12 13 THE COURT: It is not -- if he had -- in fact, the witness pointed that out. If they had written 14 15 claims that were exactly the same as the earlier claims, then it would have been denied. 16 17 Now --MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor --18 19 THE COURT: -- that is the inference I drew 20 from your testimony, and I'm quite sure that's the 21 inference they were trying to get. And if that's what 22 you're trying to do is to say, "Well, changes were made 23 in the claims," of course changes were made in the 24 claims. If they were the same claims, it would have 25 been the same --

914

915 Your Honor --MR. GUNTHER: 1 2 THE COURT: -- patent; and it would have been 3 rejected out of hand. 4 MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, we've got --5 THE COURT: One lawyer at a time arguing the motion. 6 7 MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, yes. And I apologize that you have that impression. That is not at 8 all --9 THE COURT: Well --10 11 MR. PRESTA: -- our intent. 12 THE COURT: -- you worked hard on giving that impression, I'll tell you. 13 MR. PRESTA: Okay. We're very happy to have 14 15 an instruction that will tell the jury that you are allowed to change the claims. That is not at all our 16 17 point. 18 Our point is the changes throughout the specification that are actually -- you know, there were 19 20 numerous changes. The jury hasn't seen the level of changes that were made to the application. I don't 21 think the court has, either, because it's very difficult 22 to sit down with those two documents and compare and 23 find all the changes. It took us an enormous amount of 24 25 time to go through ourselves and find them all. lt's

Jury Trial, Volume 4

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

not something that readily jumps out to a jury. 1 2 And if we send them back with the original 3 application that's very many pages and the '700 application and expect them to go through line by line 4 and look for the changes with no guidance or no help as 5 6 to what those changes are --But, again, isn't the test they 7 THE COURT: will be instructed on on that particular issue to take a 8 9 look at the four or five claims at issue and see if they are disclosed in the original application? They don't 10 11 get to sit there and compare them with the current specification of the '700 patent; they compare them, I 12 guess, basically with the specification of the '525 13 14 or --15 MR. PRESTA: Yes. 16 THE COURT: -- or the application. So --17 MR. PRESTA: But there's a --THE COURT: -- what difference does it make 18 19 on that particular issue? 20 MR. PRESTA: Okay. There's other issues; but on that 21 THE COURT: 22 particular issue, what difference does it make if there 23 was a change in the specification as opposed to was it disclosed in the claim? 24 25 MR. PRESTA: I understand your question, your

But one thing I want to point out is that one of 1 Honor. 2 the issues in this case is also just written description. We haven't -- part of our case is that 3 there is lack of written description in the '700 issued 4 patent to support the claims. That is a separate issue 5 than whether the '700 claims are entitled to claim 6 priority back to --7 8 THE COURT: Okay. And on that one, then they 9 have to take a look at the claim language and see if 10 it's properly described in the '700 patent. 11 MR. PRESTA: Yes. THE COURT: 12 Now, hand me a case or some authority --13 14 MR. PRESTA: Yes --15 THE COURT: -- that stands for the proposition that those two should be somehow combined 16 together or twisted together so that we have this 17 confusion. I mean, it's hard enough to instruct the 18 19 jury; but I'm going to try to instruct them very 20 carefully that on one issue they compare claims to the first application. 21 MR. PRESTA: 22 Yes. 23 THE COURT: On the second issue they compare claims with the specification out of the '700. 24 25 MR. PRESTA: Understood.

| 1  | THE COURT: And then on infringement they're             |
|----|---|
| 2  | going to compare the claims with the accused product.   |
| 3  | MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, that's perfectly                |
| 4  | fine with us. That's all we want the jury to do. And I  |
| 5  | guess one thing that we're noticing and raising this    |
| 6  | issue is that perhaps it is appropriate to provide that |
| 7  | testimony just to you about the changes in the '700     |
| 8  | application. Maybe it's not something that the jury     |
| 9  | should be hearing. But we've noticed that there is an   |
| 10 | issue, in view of this Power Oasis, about the burdens;  |
| 11 | and we wanted to, when the appropriate time to          |
| 12 | THE COURT: Well, you're talking about the               |
| 13 | burden of proof and the burden of persuasion. Now,      |
| 14 | what I mean, if there is a legal issue there, it        |
| 15 | needs to get presented because I made the ruling once   |
| 16 | based on presumably a full and complete presentation of |
| 17 | the issues. And at that time it was and the only        |
| 18 | issue I heard basically was "Do we get a late disclosed |
| 19 | expert's report" on the grounds that somehow there is   |
| 20 | this dramatic new change in the burden of proof, burden |
| 21 | of persuasion. My analysis of those cases, as I stated  |
| 22 | for the record, is it is no big dramatic change. There  |
| 23 | was just an emphasis on the danger someone runs if they |
| 24 | don't come forward with evidence                        |
| 25 | MR. PRESTA: Agreed.                                     |

THE COURT: -- after a prima facia case has 1 2 been made which is --3 MR. PRESTA: Yes. THE COURT: Anybody who's tried a Civil 4 5 Rights case runs into that or any other case. 6 MR. PRESTA: I understand, your Honor. Now, the one part of your -- the only thing that I would 7 8 point out -- and I have to agree with you -- to confess 9 to you that this is somewhat of a new patent law issue 10 for me, as well. But you made -- there was an aspect of 11 your ruling that the plaintiffs relied on when you made that ruling, was because this case was a continuation 12 13 and Power Oasis was a continuation-in-part. That was the distinction that led to you saying that the burdens 14 15 didn't change in any way. THE COURT: 16 No. No. 17 MR. PRESTA: That's how I understood it, your Honor. 18 19 THE COURT: I pointed out that there were two 20 slightly different cases. The Power Oasis case stated 21 or pointed out that there can be differences in priority 22 date based upon the fact that in a continuation-in-part, 23 some of its continuation gets the earlier; the new matter gets the later. That is what I took the Power 24 25 Oasis court to be reminding us all of. I put that in as

|    | 92  |
|----|---|
| 1  | an aside as I mean, that's what that case was saying.   |
| 2  | Right now, so far all I've heard is that we             |
| 3  | have the dispute as to whether it's disclosed or not    |
| 4  | disclosed. You're saying it's not disclosed. But that   |
| 5  | didn't change the burden of proof or the burden of      |
| 6  | persuasion going forward. In other words, the           |
| 7  | difference between the kind of patent didn't change in  |
| 8  | any way who has the burden of going forward. It does    |
| 9  | change the prima facia case a little bit                |
| 10 | MR. PRESTA: Okay.                                       |
| 11 | THE COURT: in some ways. But your                       |
| 12 | argument was if I recall, on why you wanted your        |
| 13 | expert was that somehow the burden of proof changed on  |
| 14 | you dramatically from 1985 or '6 when the Fram or Pro   |
| 15 | Fram or Am Fram case the other one that I talked        |
| 16 | about was decided.                                      |
| 17 | MR. PRESTA: Your Honor                                  |
| 18 | THE COURT: We get into this point where                 |
| 19 | almost too much gets read into the cases. I mean, the   |
| 20 | Fed Circuit followed pretty standard law that we all    |
| 21 | learned in law school. I'm trying to follow along what  |
| 22 | they said and it's like an overreading. If there is     |
| 23 | some piece of evidence or some part of my ruling that I |
| 24 | didn't make clear, let me know. I mean                  |
| 25 | MR. PRESTA: Okay.                                       |

|    | 52   |
|----|--|
| 1  | THE COURT: I'll try to clarify that. But                 |
| 2  | right now we're talking about do we bring in someone     |
| 3  | and the objection I see is to start talking about        |
| 4  | continuations and continuations-in-part and so forth     |
| 5  | like that.   |
| 6  | MR. PRESTA: Well, perhaps I can simplify                 |
| 7  | this for you. Now that I've had a chance to hear your    |
| 8  | further comments on the issue, your Honor, I feel more   |
| 9  | comfortable that our concern may not be as big as we     |
| 10 | feared.  |
| 11 | Our concern was that the plaintiff was in                |
| 12 | some or at some point in the trial either the            |
| 13 | plaintiffs were going to suggest it or you were going to |
| 14 | give an instruction that it is a continuation            |
| 15 | application; and that was going to carry along with it   |
| 16 | our concern that there was going to be prejudice to the  |
| 17 | jury that, of course, if the Patent Office said it's a   |
| 18 | continuation, then there must have been no differences.  |
| 19 | THE COURT: No, they're                                   |
| 20 | MR. PRESTA: That's the real underlying                   |
| 21 | concern, your Honor.                                     |
| 22 | THE COURT: The jury is going to be told                  |
| 23 | they're going to decide. And I presume that plaintiffs   |
| 24 | are not going to say that the PTO has made some          |
| 25 | determinative decision here. You get the clear and       |
|    |  |

convincing standard but --1 2 MR. PRESTA: That's our only concern, your 3 Honor. That's the reason this issue came up. lf we have the court's -- now that we understand the court's 4 position -- we certainly don't want to cause any further 5 burden on any of these issues. If that is your 6 7 position, then we really don't have an issue with Fiorito; and I'm just happy to have a chance to clarify 8 9 that. 10 THE COURT: All right. Okay. Now, that was 11 the objection as to those charts about continuation and 12 continuation-in-part. 13 Your Honor, may I be heard? MR. GUNTHER: THE COURT: 14 You may now, yes. 15 MR. GUNTHER: Yes, sir. 16 MR. PRESTA: Thank you, your Honor. 17 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, I'm very concerned about the comment that the court just made in terms 18 19 of -- and the word was used that I was attempting to 20 "mislead" the jury in some of the arguments and 21 examination that I've been making in this case. 22 THE COURT: All right. Let me rephrase. 23 think I had at least once before pointed out what an invention was and you continued to refer to the earlier 24 25 application as the invention. Perhaps that was

unintended on your part. And I will grant you that all
of us in this business, especially myself, who is far
less experienced than many of the patent lawyers in this
room, sometimes talk about the patent as being the
invention.

6 But when we stop and take a breath, we all know each claim is an invention. The specification is 7 8 not the invention, and the earlier application is not 9 the invention. But whether -- if you go back and look 10 at the transcript, you'll find that you said that a 11 number of times; and it got to the point where I was --I do not like to interrupt lawyers and give instructions 12 to the jury in the middle of the trial. I don't want to 13 interfere in how competent counsel are trying a case. 14 15 But it occurred, to my perception, several times, to the point where I finally had to say that. 16

17 And I think it's continued since. I mean, we still get this idea that your argument seems to be 18 19 this -- I mean, it's a neat argument, if you can make 20 it, that "Well, they changed the claims. So, therefore -- that's not what's in the previous 21 22 specification; so, therefore, under this rule" -- in fact, I think the witness -- Mr. Newman was actually 23 24 cross-examined on that point; and he very adroitly 25 turned it around and said, "No, if the claims are

> Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

923

exactly the same, then they would have been rejected." 1 That was on cross-examination. 2 3 That again alerted me to the fact that that seems to be what you're trying to edge the jury into is 4 this idea that because the claims were changed, they 5 can't possibly meet that test of being the same as what 6 was disclosed in the specification. 7 No, sir. That's not -- that --8 MR. GUNTHER: really, your Honor, with respect, it totally misses my 9 10 point. 11 My point is that in 2002 he writes a set of And I've said to the jury, both in my opening 12 claims. 13 statement and when I was examining Mr. Armstrong, that he is allowed to do that. He's allowed to write claims 14 15 and, in fact -- not for me to decide. I didn't make up But he's allowed to write claims on our 16 this rule. product. 17 But, your Honor -- and I've said this every 18 19 time -- if he's going to do that, he has to show that 20 what's in that application in 1996, that that supports 21 it, that it's all there; and he has to have that in its 22 entirety. 23 THE COURT: And I think you've just made a correct statement of the law; but I think if you go back 24 25 in the transcript and take a look at how you phrased

| 1  | some of those questions, you'll find that the way you    |
|----|--|
| 2  | phrased them and the way you phrased some of your        |
| 3  | statements was referring to the 1996 application as "the |
| 4  | invention" and that if the invention is not in that      |
| 5  | specification if that's not there, then the claims       |
| 6  | are not there and then talking about him changing the    |
| 7  | claims. That is the perception I'm getting.              |
| 8  | Now, it could be that I've misheard all of               |
| 9  | this and I didn't understand it. I'll grant you that.    |
| 10 | But that's the perception I'm getting and I probably am  |
| 11 | a little more alert to those nuances than the jury and   |
| 12 | that's what I'm trying to keep them on the straight      |
| 13 | about. But this wasn't one time. It's happened a         |
| 14 | number of different times.                               |
| 15 | Like I said, I will perfectly well grant                 |
| 16 | you and given your experience and reputation, I'm        |
| 17 | quite sure it is unintentional; but it's a key this      |
| 18 | is more of a key issue in this case than in most. In     |
| 19 | fact, it's the cutting edge, just about, in this case;   |
| 20 | and that may be why it is coming up more and is why I'm  |
| 21 | trying to keep the jury focused on these very distinct   |
| 22 | differences that in most cases nobody cares about.       |
| 23 | MR. GUNTHER: Right. But, your Honor, you                 |
| 24 | and I are in agreement, I think, at the end of the       |
| 25 | day and you'll tell me certainly if you disagree with    |

925

|    | 920  |
|----|--|
| 1  | this that what we're doing here, what we're about in     |
| 2  | this case in terms of the invalidity, is taking those    |
| 3  | claims that he wrote in 2002 to cover our multiple input |
| 4  | controllers and to look back at that specification and   |
| 5  | to see if that specification, in fact, discloses a       |
| 6  | multiple controller multiple controllers and that's      |
| 7  | the entire specification, including the figures,         |
| 8  | including what he said about Chang, and all of those     |
| 9  | things.  |
| 10 | THE COURT: Each and every element, as a                  |
| 11 | matter of fact, not just not just a general              |
| 12 | di sclosure.   |
| 13 | MR. GUNTHER: That's right. That's right.                 |
| 14 | And, your Honor, I appreciate that comment.              |
| 15 | So, your Honor now, let me just move to                  |
| 16 | one other thing because, your Honor, I appreciate        |
| 17 | your I also appreciate your clarification because I      |
| 18 | will tell you, your Honor, in 24 years of practicing     |
| 19 | law, I have never knowingly I may have made a mistake    |
| 20 | at some point, but I've never knowingly misrepresented   |
| 21 | anything to a court or to a jury.                        |
| 22 | THE COURT: I will okay. I will grant you                 |
| 23 | on that, that the way I said it was probably a little    |
| 24 | harsh. But it unintentionally or whatever, my            |
| 25 | perception is and that's why I instructed them and       |
|    |  |

why I'm so concerned about this, is that seemed to be 1 2 the thrust. And, in fact, I can't say that as an 3 attorney I might not be trying to push the jury as far as I could one way or the other. It's not necessarily 4 5 misleading. 6 But anyway, I will accept that this is not some intentional attempt to drive them astray; but 7 8 because of how we as lawyers and judges in this field 9 are sometimes a little bit loose with our wording, it is 10 going to make it difficult for me -- or makes it even 11 more important that I instruct them very carefully on what the law is. We throw around words that sometimes 12 are used just a little bit loosely; and in the end, 13 they've got to get their instruction. 14 15 Now, as far as going through the file history, if there's some reason that you want to go 16 through pages of file history -- I mean, again, I'm not 17 interested in giving the jury claim construction. 18 19 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor --20 THE COURT: If there's some other reason than that -- I mean, I'm not trying to cut you off on 21 22 evidence you're entitled to have in but -- or that is important; but, you know, going back over is it a 23 24 continuation or a continuation-in-part or going over the 25 claim history to show how the terms should be construed

I think is error. 1 2 Now, if there's some other reason, let me 3 know. MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, let's do it this 4 If there's anything else that we have to bring to 5 way. your attention on that issue, we will do it. And we 6 7 appreciate your guidance on that. 8 THE COURT: And discuss it, of course, 9 with -- you know, there may not be any objection to it. 10 I mean, discuss it with opposing counsel on that. l'm 11 not trying to keep out witnesses, per se; but certain lines of testimony I'm very concerned about. 12 0kay? 13 MR. GUNTHER: Yes, sir. I understand. MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, there's one comment 14 15 that --THE COURT: 16 Sure. 17 MR. PRESTA: If you would indulge me for one 18 moment. 19 THE COURT: Go ahead. 20 MR. PRESTA: And I'm going to bring this up because I know your Honor's probably thinking about how 21 22 to instruct the jury on this possible issue and I just 23 want to point out one thing because I heard you mention it a couple of times, that the claims define the 24 25 invention; and I certainly agree with you about that as

a patent attorney. 1 2 The struggle I think that we're having a 3 little bit is, under Section 112 of 35 USC, part of our case is that you have to have written description in the 4 specification for the invention. So, the invention has 5 to be contained within the written description. 6 7 THE COURT: But in that case --8 MR. PRESTA: So, it is a little competing --9 THE COURT: And I brought this up. In that case -- and if you've got some authority to the 10 11 contrary, show me. But under that section, they're supposed to compare the claim against the '700 12 13 specification. MR. PRESTA: Yes. 14 15 THE COURT: In the other case they've got to compare the claim against the 1996 application. 16 17 MR. PRESTA: Oh, yes, your Honor. That is a distinction that, in fact, the -- the written 18 19 description support -- the invention needs to be in the '700 specification because that's what 112 says to us. 20 21 And you are correct; there is a distinction there. 22 just wanted to point that out to your Honor. 23 THE COURT: In other words, I've seen no authority for the proposition that if the '700 24 25 specification is worded a little differently from the

1996 application, that that somehow goes against the 1 written description requirement that you're talking 2 3 about. Although, obviously if there are massive differences, then you go ahead and argue straight from 4 the claim to the original application. 5 6 MR. PRESTA: Yes, your Honor. An issue that 7 we are trying to -- I just wanted to apprise the court 8 of is that really it's the full scope of the invention, 9 whether it's supported in the earlier application; and that's our goal, is to get that issue in front of the 10 11 court, as well as --12 THE COURT: lt is. And the jury is going to have to consider it also. There's no question. 13 And 14 obviously you're at the heart of it now with this 15 accelerometer and does it meet that third step of claim 16 19 and so forth and is it one sensor or is it several. I mean, that's -- but that seemed -- as I said before, I 17 think that's a factual issue. I don't -- so far I 18 19 haven't seen it come up as a claim construction. 20 MR. PRESTA: And we are going to avoid it as 21 a claim construction issue, your Honor, because I think 22 your Honor indicated whether you might have to make a 23 ruling on claim construction as to whether an accelerometer is a sensor or two sensors. 24 But, 25 fortunately, I don't -- in my view, you would not have

to look at a piece of the accused device and make a 1 claim construction with respect to that. 2 3 THE COURT: Let me just be very careful that no one takes from anything I've said that I am not going 4 5 to make claim constructions. If it's brought up to 6 me -- and, in fact, if you think one needs to be made and you don't object, I'm going to consider you waived 7 it. I'm not going to get into this trap of, "Well, the 8 9 mean old judge was such that we couldn't bring it up. 10 We were afraid to bring it up." 11 If there is a legal issue or a factual issue, bring it up. I don't get mad at lawyers for trying to 12 represent their client, really. That's your job. 13 And 14 I've been over there on your side a lot. 15 But on the other hand, if you don't tell me, I don't read your minds. And I'll say this one more 16 17 There's a lot of things that go on, I can't tell time. whether you're just missing something or you're laying a 18 19 trap for your opponent. 20 MR. PRESTA: I understand, your Honor. There's more than one case I had 21 THE COURT: 22 where I kind of waited until they said something that 23 would have been objectionable and let them go on with it and on with it and then if I could spring a trap on them 24 25 with that, why raise the objection, get them later.

931

ſ

|    | 932   |
|----|---|
| 1  | Now, you mess up on that, you look pretty               |
| 2  | stupid. I'll grant you that one. Your client doesn't    |
| 3  | ever hire you again. But it's still a tactic that can   |
| 4  | be used; and it's not me as a judge to jump in and say, |
| 5  | "Hey, why aren't you objecting now" or "Why aren't you  |
| 6  | doing something?" If you've got an objection or you've  |
| 7  | got a concern, raise it.                                |
| 8  | MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, and I agree with you            |
| 9  | that there may have been some claim construction issues |
| 10 | that might come up at the trial the pretrial            |
| 11 | conference. And I know that wasn't the greatest news    |
| 12 | for you to hear, but I can tell you this accelerometer  |
| 13 | issue was not one that I envisioned.                    |
| 14 | THE COURT: Okay. All right. We are in                   |
| 15 | recess until half past.                                 |
| 16 | (Recess, 12:47 p.m. to 1:27 p.m.)                       |
| 17 | (Open court, all parties present, jury                  |
| 18 | present.)   |
| 19 | THE COURT: Okay, Mr. Gunther.                           |
| 20 | MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, your Honor.                     |
| 21 | BY MR. GUNTHER:   |
| 22 | Q. Mr. Ikeda, before the break let's just see if we     |
| 23 | can orient ourselves. We were talking about the         |
| 24 | accelerometer in the Wii Remote.                        |
| 25 | A. Yes.   |
|    |   |

932

| 1  | Q. Now I want to ask you about one other part of the     |
|----|--|
| 2  | Wii Remote. And if you could hold it up to demonstrate,  |
| 3  | if necessary. You testified that there was wireless      |
| 4  | technology in the Wii Remote; is that correct?           |
| 5  | A. Yes, that's right.                                    |
| 6  | Q. Does that provide any advantages for the Wii Remote   |
| 7  | or the people who are using it?                          |
| 8  | A. Up until now, the games had been connected by wires   |
| 9  | to the game controllers and the wires can get in the way |
| 10 | and, also, the fact that it's gone wireless means that   |
| 11 | it can be manipulated entirely freely (demonstrating).   |
| 12 | Q. Now, there's been some testimony about the Wavebird   |
| 13 | controller for the GameCube. Is that wireless, as well?  |
| 14 | A. Yes. The Wavebird is wireless; however, you have      |
| 15 | to have a receiver and attach it to the GameCube in      |
| 16 | order to operate with the Wavebird.                      |
| 17 | Q. And is the Wii Remote different in that regard?       |
| 18 | A. Yes. In the case of the Wii, there is, inside it,     |
| 19 | something that operates as a receiver; so, you don't     |
| 20 | have to attach a receiver to it.                         |
| 21 | Q. Is there a particular type of wireless technology     |
| 22 | that the Wii Remote uses?                                |
| 23 | A. Yes. It uses wireless technology known as             |
| 24 | "Bluetooth."   |
| 25 | Q. I think I've heard that term before. Can you tell     |
|    |  |

Г

|    | 934  |
|----|--|
| 1  | us: Is there any other devices besides video game        |
| 2  | controllers that use Bluetooth technology?               |
| 3  | A. Yes. It is frequently used in the headsets of cell    |
| 4  | phones.  |
| 5  | Q. Now, sir, does Nintendo make the Bluetooth chips      |
| 6  | used in the Wii Remote?                                  |
| 7  | A. No, it doesn't.                                       |
| 8  | Q. Who makes those chips?                                |
| 9  | A. We purchase those chips from a U.S. company called    |
| 10 | "Broad Comm."  |
| 11 | Q. Now, sir, as you were developing the Wii Remote and   |
| 12 | as you got to the final stages, what did you consider to |
| 13 | be some of its most important qualities?                 |
| 14 | A. What I was constantly thinking in terms of was that   |
| 15 | it could be that operation could be achieved by means    |
| 16 | of a kind of direct sensation.                           |
| 17 | Q. And how did that improve the experience, in your      |
| 18 | perception, over prior controllers?                      |
| 19 | A. In the case of controllers up until that point, you   |
| 20 | had complex buttons. You had to firmly grip it with      |
| 21 | both hands in order to use it. Whereas, in the case of   |
| 22 | the Wii Remote, you could simply wave it or move it      |
| 23 | around in order to operate characters. In that sense it  |
| 24 | was very simple to use.                                  |
| 25 | Q. Okay.   |

935 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, at this time, with 1 2 your permission, I'd like to ask Mr. Ikeda to come down 3 and demonstrate the --THE COURT: Please. Go ahead. 4 MR. GUNTHER: 5 Thank you. BY MR. GUNTHER: 6 7 And, again, Mr. Ikeda, I'll try to share the mic 0. 8 with you. 9 If you can get the game up and running and describe what you're doing. Thank you. 10 11 Α. Well, first of all, I'll put on a strap so as not to drop the Wii Remote. 12 13 Using the pointer, I'm going to select the Wii Sports menu. The way I'm moving the cursor here is 14 15 by capturing the light from the sensor bar. 16 Q. And let me just ask you: Is that the sensor bar that we have right there on defense counsel table? 17 Α. That's correct. 18 So, now I'm going to start up the Wii Sports 19 20 game. The game I'd like to introduce here on this occasion is the bowling game. Because I'm going to be 21 22 playing it by myself, I'm going to select Number 1. And I will choose a person who will represent my character. 23 24 Q. And let me just ask you a question. In terms of the Bluetooth wireless connection, where is the 25

Jury Trial, Volume 4

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

|    | 936  |
|----|--|
| 1  | communication going from and to as you use the Remote?   |
| 2  | A. Communication is going in both directions, between    |
| 3  | the Wii Remote and the console itself.                   |
| 4  | So, now I'd like to send down a ball. First              |
| 5  | of all, by means of the cross key, I establish the       |
| 6  | locations where I'm going to stand. Then before I        |
| 7  | actually cast the ball here, I hold down the B button.   |
| 8  | When I throw the ball, the moment I release the B        |
| 9  | button, that's the moment when the ball will be          |
| 10 | released. So, I'll give it a try here.                   |
| 11 | (Demonstrating.)   |
| 12 | Q. I'm very disappointed. When we did this, you got a    |
| 13 | strike.  |
| 14 | Before you try to get that 5/10 split, let me            |
| 15 | ask you a question: When you threw the ball and when     |
| 16 | you were using that motion with the Wii Remote to throw  |
| 17 | the ball, can you tell us what was going on inside the   |
| 18 | Remote and how your body motion was translated into what |
| 19 | we saw on the television screen?                         |
| 20 | A. The first thing that happens is that at the moment    |
| 21 | of the throw itself, the amount of acceleration in the   |
| 22 | throw is detected by the accelerometer; and that is      |
| 23 | conveyed to the Wii.                                     |
| 24 | Then the Wii detects whether or not the B                |
| 25 | button has been released and conveys that fact to the    |
|    |  |

When the console receives that signal, the 1 consol e. console then recognizes that the player has gone through 2 the action of throwing the ball. 3 Why don't you try to pick up the spare. 4 Q. 5 I'll do my best. This time I'm going to try to Α. 6 throw a quick ball. 7 (Demonstrating.) I'm very sorry. This will be the last one. Give me one more try. 8 0. 9 See if you can get a strike. No pressure. (Demonstrating.) 10 Α. 11 Q. Would you like to demonstrate quickly another game for us? 12 13 Using the pointer, I get out of the bowling game. Α. Next, I'd like to explain the baseball game. 14 15 Again, because I'm playing it just by myself, I will select the Number 1. And I'm going to use the same 16 17 character as before. 18 In this case you don't use the buttons on the 19 Remote at all. Just by swinging the Remote, that makes the bat swing (demonstrating). 20 21 The game is about to begin, and I'm the 22 batter. All you have to do to operate it is to just swing the Remote, as you saw (demonstrating). And you 23 don't even have to swing it very hard. You can swing it 24 25 quite lightly.

Γ

|    | 938  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. Again, if you can tell us, as you're the next         |
| 2  | batter sorry. I distracted you. As you're doing          |
| 3  | that, can you tell us again how the accelerometer enters |
| 4  | into what's happening?                                   |
| 5  | A. When I'm in the ready position, I'm holding the Wii   |
| 6  | Remote in this fashion (demonstrating). And that way     |
| 7  | the accelerometer points to the bottom; and, so, it      |
| 8  | knows that I'm going to swing in the ready position.     |
| 9  | And next, when I actually take a swing, that             |
| 10 | generates an acceleration. Then when that acceleration   |
| 11 | is takes place, the accelerometer detects that           |
| 12 | acceleration and conveys it to the Wii Remote; and the   |
| 13 | Wii Remote then, in turn, conveys that to the console.   |
| 14 | Q. Are you now the pitcher?                              |
| 15 | A. Yes, that's right. We've had a changeover here,       |
| 16 | and now I'm doing pitching.                              |
| 17 | Q. All right. We'll just do one throw. But if you        |
| 18 | can show how the Wii Remote is used to actually throw a  |
| 19 | pitch.   |
| 20 | A. By using the button and using a certain kind of       |
| 21 | motion, I can throw a change-up pitch; and that's what   |
| 22 | I'd like to do here. So, I'm now going to go through     |
| 23 | the motion of pitching (demonstrating).                  |
| 24 | Q. Okay. Let me ask you if you could do this. I just     |
| 25 | want to demonstrate one more game, and this is the       |
|    |  |

Γ

|    | 939   |
|----|---|
| 1  | boxing game.  |
| 2  | Could you tell us how you do that and what              |
| 3  | you need in terms of the controllers to do that?        |
| 4  | A. First of all, by using the pointer, I'd like to      |
| 5  | switch over to the boxing game. Again, because I'm a    |
| 6  | single player, I choose the Number 1; and, also, I will |
| 7  | stay as the same character.                             |
| 8  | Here comes up a screen that says to play this           |
| 9  | game, you need to use the Nunchuk controller. And, so,  |
| 10 | I will would it be okay if I use the controller         |
| 11 | that's right there?                                     |
| 12 | Q. There you go.  |
| 13 | A. In the bottom of the Remote, there is this           |
| 14 | extension connector here; and, so, that's where I'm     |
| 15 | going to connect the Nunchuk.                           |
| 16 | Q. Now, before you get going because you're playing     |
| 17 | against the computer, aren't you?                       |
| 18 | A. That's right.  |
| 19 | Q. Are you blue gloves or red gloves?                   |
| 20 | A. I've got the blue gloves. And where you can see my   |
| 21 | opponent's face, that is the computer.                  |
| 22 | Q. All right. So, now if you can do a little boxing     |
| 23 | for us and describe, as you're doing it, how you're     |
| 24 | using the Wii Remote and the Wii Nunchuk.               |
| 25 | A. (Demonstrating.) For both the Nunchuk and the        |
Remote control, when you thrust it forward, you get a 1 2 punch. You thrust the Remote forward, you get a punch; 3 likewise with the Nunchuk. Also, if you apply acceleration to the left 4 and the right, as you can see, the character himself 5 goes to the left or the right. (Demonstrating.) 6 7 And, so, with simple motions of this kind, you can play the boxing game. 8 9 0. Now, are you using any buttons or joysticks as you 10 play this game? 11 Α. No. It is simply the motions of thrusting the Nunchuk or the Remote control forward, as you can see 12 here (demonstrating). I'm not using the analog stick or 13 the buttons. 14 15 Q. Thank you very much for the demonstration, Mr. Ikeda. You can re-take the witness stand. 16 17 MR. GUNTHER: And for the record, the Wii console system is Defendant's Exhibit 169; the Wii 18 19 Sports game disk that was being demonstrated is Defendant's Exhibit 171; the Wii Remote is Defendant's 20 Exhibit 167; and the Wii Nunchuk is Defendant's 21 22 Exhibit 162. 23 BY MR. GUNTHER: 24 Mr. Ikeda, we talked about your role in developing Q. the Wii controllers; and I'd like to ask you this 25

| 1  | question: Are you proud of the work that you've done?    |
|----|--|
| 2  | A. Yes, I am. I really agonized over the development     |
| 3  | of this Wii Remote. I was thinking every day about what  |
| 4  | I could do to come up with a game controller that people |
| 5  | would really like. And what I was thinking about was     |
| 6  | something that appeared simple and something in which    |
| 7  | you could get real direct sensation when using it.       |
| 8  | With that in mind, I worked very hard to come            |
| 9  | up with a Remote control controller that has an          |
| 10 | accelerometer and pointing technology, to come up with   |
| 11 | the kind of controller that I believe you now understand |
| 12 | it to be.  |
| 13 | Since the time the Wii has gone on sale, I               |
| 14 | have had many occasions and many reasons to be pleased.  |
| 15 | There's one thing that has made me particularly happy.   |
| 16 | I was particularly happy when my elderly relatives my    |
| 17 | elderly lady relatives and people in the area were       |
| 18 | actually able to say to me, "I've used the Wii, and I    |
| 19 | really enjoy it." I'm very proud to think that I was     |
| 20 | able to develop a remote control that people can use and |
| 21 | that puts smiles on their faces. That's all. Thank       |
| 22 | you.   |
| 23 | MR. GUNTHER: I pass the witness.                         |
| 24 | THE COURT: Mr. Cawley?                                   |
| 25 | MR. CAWLEY: Thank you, your Honor.                       |
|    |  |

941

| _  | Jury Trial, Volume 4                                    |
|----|---|
|    | 942   |
| 1  | REDIRECT EXAMINATION OF AKIO IKEDA                      |
| 2  | BY MR. CAWLEY:  |
| 3  | Q. Are you okay, Mr. Ikeda?                             |
| 4  | A. Yes. I'll be okay.                                   |
| 5  | Q. May I ask you a few more questions?                  |
| 6  | A. Yes.   |
| 7  | Q. Thank you.   |
| 8  | Can the accelerometer in the Wii Remote move            |
| 9  | things on the screen without pointing at the light bar? |
| 10 | A. Yes. As I said before, if you're talking about the   |
| 11 | motion of a ball-type object, that can be done.         |
| 12 | Q. And you described for us that the first time you     |
| 13 | used an accelerometer was in the Kirby game, correct?   |
| 14 | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 15 | Q. Did the Kirby game have a camera at all?             |
| 16 | A. It had no camera.                                    |
| 17 | Q. But the accelerometer still worked, correct?         |
| 18 | A. Yes, it worked.                                      |
| 19 | MR. CAWLEY: May I approach the witness, your            |
| 20 | Honor?  |
| 21 | THE COURT: You may.                                     |
| 22 | BY MR. CAWLEY:  |
| 23 | Q. Mr. Ikeda, I've handed you a Wii Remote attached to  |
| 24 | a Wii Nunchuk; is that right?                           |
| 25 | A. Yes. They are connected.                             |

943 Q. Thank you. And is that the controller that you 1 2 just showed us how to do boxing with? 3 Α. That's correct. Now, could you hold up your hands again and show us 4 0. how, using this controller, you can punch with your 5 right hand? 6 7 Before that -- I don't want to drop it; so, I'm Α. 8 going to put the strap on. Safety first; so, please go ahead. 9 0. All right. I'm ready now. 10 Α. 11 So, now I will give you the punching operation (demonstrating). 12 13 Now, why or how does that motion with the Wii 0. Remote in your right hand cause the character on the 14 15 screen to punch? It's because when the Remote control is pressed 16 Α. forward like that, the accelerometer then indicates to 17 the Remote control itself that acceleration in that 18 19 direction has taken place. 20 0. Thank you. Now can you show us the same motion but this time punching with your left hand? 21 22 Α. Yes. You deliver a left-hand punch with this 23 operation (demonstrating). 24 Q. Well, Mr. Ikeda, how does the Nunchuk in your left 25 hand know that you are making a motion with your left

Γ

|    | 944   |
|----|---|
| 1  | hand when the accelerometer is in the Remote in your    |
| 2  | right hand?   |
| 3  | A. Within the Nunchuk controller, there is also         |
| 4  | there is one accelerometer. There is one accelerometer  |
| 5  | each, one in the Remote control and one in the Nunchuk. |
| 6  | Q. So, do you mean in this controller you hold in your  |
| 7  | hands, there are two accelerometers?                    |
| 8  | A. Yes. The way it would be is with these two           |
| 9  | controllers together, you get a total of two of them.   |
| 10 | Q. I see. And the Nunchuk in your left hand, with       |
| 11 | what you've just testified is its own accelerometer,    |
| 12 | doesn't have a motion-sensing camera, does it?          |
| 13 | A. There's no camera in it, no.                         |
| 14 | Q. But the accelerometer still works in the Nunchuk     |
| 15 | even without a camera, correct?                         |
| 16 | A. Yes, it does.  |
| 17 | Q. Is the accelerometer in the Nunchuk also a           |
| 18 | three-axis accelerometer?                               |
| 19 | A. Yes. It's a three-axis accelerometer.                |
| 20 | Q. Is it a 2g accelerometer or a 3g accelerometer?      |
| 21 | A. The accelerometer in the Nunchuk is an               |
| 22 | accelerometer that can detect 2g's.                     |
| 23 | Q. And is it true, Mr. Ikeda, that the two              |
| 24 | accelerometers, the one in the Nunchuk and the one in   |
| 25 | the Remote, work basically in the same way?             |

945 MR. GUNTHER: Objection, your Honor. 1 This is 2 beyond the scope of the infringement contentions in this case, and I would request a brief sidebar. 3 4 THE COURT: All right. Step over here, please, Chris. 5 (The following proceedings were conducted at 6 7 sidebar with both parties.) 8 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, there has been --9 obviously, I don't have any problem with him bringing out the fact that there is an accelerometer in the 10 11 Nunchuk. I do not object to that. But now what he's trying to do is get into the details of that 12 accelerometer which are nowhere in the infringement 13 contentions for claim 19. 14 15 And what it's leading to is going to be a suggestion to the jury that, well, if the accelerometer 16 in the Wii Remote is not good enough, maybe you can look 17 at the accelerometer in the Wii. That's improper. 18 19 That's not the way they've been -- they've disclosed. 20 That's not the expert reports that they've put in, and that's where it's heading when he starts getting into 21 22 the details of the accelerometer in the Wii Nunchuk. 23 Well, first of all, I haven't MR. CAWLEY: said that. But, second of all, the point of this 24 25 examination is the question that I just asked. The

court will recall from yesterday that there was a 1 2 question raised by defendants about whether the spec 3 sheet that Dr. Howe had looked at was the right one because it was 3g instead of 2g. This witness has just 4 said -- or is about to say, I believe, that the 2q 5 6 accelerometer works the same way as the 3g accelerometer, which ties in that spec sheet. 7 8 THE COURT: I'll allow that question, but I'm 9 not going to allow it to go beyond -- further than the 10 infringement contentions. I mean, that was a 11 distinction that was raised pretty heavily, that these must be completely different accelerometers. 12 13 MR. GUNTHER: Right. THE COURT: So, I think he's allowed to say 14 15 If he starts going further, object again; and that. I'll understand what your objection is. 16 17 MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, sir. I understand. Thank you. 18 19 THE COURT: Okay. 20 (Sidebar conference concluded. The following proceedings were heard in open court.) 21 22 THE COURT: Go ahead, counsel. 23 MR. CAWLEY: Thank you, your Honor. BY MR. CAWLEY: 24 25 Q. Mr. Ikeda, let me repeat my question for you. You

Γ

|    | 94   |
|----|--|
| 1  | agree, don't you, that the accelerometer in the Nunchuk  |
| 2  | works in the same way as the accelerometer in the        |
| 3  | Remote?  |
| 4  | A. Yes. They operate in the same way.                    |
| 5  | Q. Thank you. Now, you mentioned, also, that you had     |
| 6  | some patents; is that right?                             |
| 7  | A. Yes.  |
| 8  | Q. How did you get your patents?                         |
| 9  | A. Most are still in the application stage. But the      |
| 10 | way it works is at my company we have a group that       |
| 11 | specializes in patents. And when development work is     |
| 12 | being carried out, then you would hold discussions with  |
| 13 | people in that specialist group to decide whether or not |
| 14 | patents should be applied for.                           |
| 15 | MR. GARZA: We have a check interpretation                |
| 16 | issue.   |
| 17 | THE COURT: All right.                                    |
| 18 | If you want to, step on up and discuss it                |
| 19 | with the translator.                                     |
| 20 | THE CHECK INTERPRETER: Just                              |
| 21 | THE COURT: You need to speak up loud enough              |
| 22 | for us to hear, or speak into the microphone.            |
| 23 | THE CHECK INTERPRETER: Could you please                  |
| 24 | repeat   |
| 25 | THE COURT: You need to speak into the                    |

microphone. 1 2 THE CHECK INTERPRETER: Could you just repeat 3 again what he said, just the --4 Mr. Ikeda, could you please repeat your 5 answer? In Nintendo there is a group that specializes in 6 Α. When we're making products of this kind, we 7 patents. 8 have discussions with the patent specialist group to 9 determine whether or not patents should be applied for. BY MR. CAWLEY: 10 11 Q. Thank you, Mr. Ikeda. 12 Why do you apply for patents? It's in order to protect Nintendo's technology. 13 Α. And do you think that patents are 14 Q. I see. 15 important? Yes, I do. 16 Α. And are you proud of the patents that you have 17 0. applied for? 18 19 Α. Yes, I am proud of them. 20 0. Thank you, Mr. Ikeda. 21 MR. CAWLEY: I pass the witness. Nothing further, your Honor. 22 MR. GUNTHER: 23 THE COURT: All right. Any objection to this witness being excused? 24 25 MR. GUNTHER: Not from Nintendo, your Honor.

MR. CAWLEY: Not from the plaintiff, your 1 2 Honor. 3 THE COURT: All right. In that case, the witness is, in fact, excused, which means he is free to 4 leave; or if he wishes to stay, he may do so. 5 He is no longer under the rule. So, he can leave or stay as he 6 7 chooses. 8 Thank you for being here, sir. 9 Next witness? MR. BOVENKAMP: We have some brief video 10 11 clips to play, your Honor. 12 THE COURT: All right. 13 MR. BOVENKAMP: May I request a brief interim statement? 14 15 THE COURT: You may. 16 MR. BOVENKAMP: Ladies and gentlemen, I'm happy to say that we are almost done with our 17 case-in-chief. We have three video clips for you, to 18 19 play; and they are all very short. 20 The first witness that you're going to hear from by video testimony is an individual that is 21 22 employed by Microsoft in their research division. He is 23 going to give you about five minutes of testimony about the state of the art as he understands it. 24 25 (Video presentation begins with no audio.)

|    | 950  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 1  | THE COURT: Now, I notice there was some                  |  |
| 2  | adjustment done by the defendant's tech advisor when you |  |
| 3  | were trying to cut back on the sound from the Wii.       |  |
| 4  | Perhaps that adjustment is the one we need to look at.   |  |
| 5  | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF RUSSELL SANCHEZ                  |  |
| 6  | Q. Good morning.   |  |
| 7  | A. Good morning.   |  |
| 8  | Q. Please state your name.                               |  |
| 9  | A. Russell Sanchez.                                      |  |
| 10 | Q. Where do you live?                                    |  |
| 11 | A. Seattle, Washington.                                  |  |
| 12 | Q. Are you currently employed?                           |  |
| 13 | A. Yes.  |  |
| 14 | Q. Who is your employer?                                 |  |
| 15 | A. Microsoft.  |  |
| 16 | Q. How long have you worked at Microsoft?                |  |
| 17 | A. A little over 15 years.                               |  |
| 18 | Q. And what is your current position at Microsoft?       |  |
| 19 | A. I'm a principal program manager.                      |  |
| 20 | Q. Are you in any particular division or group within    |  |
| 21 | Microsoft?   |  |
| 22 | A. I'm in the research division.                         |  |
| 23 | Q. Do you recall why Microsoft made the decision to      |  |
| 24 | use the optical sensing in those products, as opposed to |  |
| 25 | a potentiometer?   |  |

Oh, oh, oh. Yes, I do recall. 1 Α. 2 0. And what was that? We chose to use the optical sensor because it was a 3 Α. much better solution for the customer. It provided 4 higher accuracy, better resolution. It didn't drift. 5 6 Potentiometers, their output changes with the 7 temperature in the room; and the potentiometers require 8 a timing loop in the processor of the computer. So, 9 it's an inefficient means of calculating the handle So, the optical sensing was -- provided a 10 position. 11 faster, more accurate, higher resolution tracking system than a potentiometer. 12 13 Were there any advantages of using a potentiometer 0. sensing system instead of the optical sensing system? 14 15 I would have to speculate. I think that the Α. optical system was much better. 16 Were there or are there any ways in which the 17 0. potentiometer sensing is superior to the optical 18 19 sensing? 20 Α. I think the optical system is better in every respect. 21 You now have a copy of Exhibit 201, which is U.S. 22 Q. Patent Number 5, 694, 153. Do you see that? 23 Yes. 24 Α. 25 And you're one of the named inventors on this Q.

Г

| 952  |
|--|
| patent, right?   |
| A. Yes.  |
| Q. Well, this patent was filed on July 31st, 1995,       |
| right?   |
| A. I don't recall the exact filing date.                 |
| Q. If you look on the left-hand column, about a third    |
| of the way down  |
| A. Oh, yes.  |
| Q. Okay. And then if you look at the top right           |
| corner, it shows that this patent issued in December,    |
| 1997?  |
| A. Yes.  |
| Q. Do you remember reviewing the patent application      |
| that led to this patent before it was filed at the       |
| Patent Office?   |
| A. I recall reviewing it, yes.                           |
| Q. Did you decide at the time that everything            |
| contained in this patent was accurate?                   |
| A. If I've I don't recall that feeling exactly; but      |
| if I signed the oath, then I'm sure that I was honest in |
| signing that oath.                                       |
| Q. Well, generally when you review a patent              |
| application before it's filed, you want to make sure     |
| your invention is accurately described.                  |
| A. Yes.  |
|  |

| Q. And then in Column 2, the last paragraph of the       |
|--|
| background section, it says that: The inventors are      |
| unaware of a reliable and durable joystick or input      |
| device that eliminates the need for variable resisters   |
| or complex mechanical transducers.                       |
| Do you see that?   |
| A. Yes.  |
| Q. At the time you filed this patent application, was    |
| that statement true?                                     |
| A. At the time I would have to speculate; however,       |
| I don't recall my thoughts at the time. But              |
| Q. You assume that you wouldn't have filed a patent      |
| application if that was untrue?                          |
| A. Yes.  |
| Q. Then the next sentence says that: Additionally,       |
| the inventors are unaware of any joystick-type input     |
| device that provides three-dimensional position signals. |
| Do you see that?   |
| A. Yes.  |
| Q. You wouldn't have filed this patent application if    |
| you didn't believe that sentence to be true, right?      |
| A. I don't think at the time I was aware of any other    |
| three-dimensional joysticks.                             |
| MR. CASSADY: Ladies and gentlemen of the                 |
| jury, my name is Jason Cassady. I represent Anascape,    |
|  |

|    | 551  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 1  | along with the rest of the team here. The next video   |  |
| 2  | you're going to see is from Ms. Collette Meader. She's |  |
| 3  | the corporate controller for Nintendo, and she's going |  |
| 4  | to describe how Nintendo of America sells products to  |  |
| 5  | Canada and to South America from the United States.    |  |
| 6  | Also, and more importantly, she's going to             |  |
| 7  | testify that the Nunchuk is sold with the Wii every    |  |
| 8  | time.  |  |
| 9  | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF COLLETTE MEADER                |  |
| 10 | Q. Will you state your name for the record, please?    |  |
| 11 | A. Collette Meader.                                    |  |
| 12 | Q. What's your current position at Nintendo?           |  |
| 13 | A. Corporate controller.                               |  |
| 14 | Q. How long have you been at Nintendo?                 |  |
| 15 | A. Twenty-five years.                                  |  |
| 16 | Q. You understand that today you're testifying on      |  |
| 17 | behalf of Nintendo as a 30(b)(6) representative,       |  |
| 18 | correct?   |  |
| 19 | A. Yes.  |  |
| 20 | Q. What subsidiaries do you collect financial data for |  |
| 21 | for Nintendo of America?                               |  |
| 22 | A. For Nintendo of America, NES Merchandising, Inc.;   |  |
| 23 | HFI; Siras.com Siras is S-I-R-A-S and Nintendo of      |  |
| 24 | Canada Limited.  |  |
| 25 | Q. And, then, Nintendo Canada, what is that?           |  |
|    |  |  |

Γ

|    |  | 955   |
|----|--|---|
| 1  | Α.   | Nintendo of Canada is our distribution company for  |
| 2  | Canada. So, they purchase Nintendo products from   |   |
| 3  | Nintendo of America and distribute them in Canada. |   |
| 4  | Q.   | Is there a Nintendo Mexico?                         |
| 5  | Α.   | No.   |
| 6  | Q.   | Does Nintendo of America handle the distribution to |
| 7  | Mexic  | 0?  |
| 8  | Α.   | We have a distributor that we sell to for Mexico.   |
| 9  | Q.   | What's the name of that distributor?                |
| 10 | Α.   | Currently it's Latamel.                             |
| 11 | Q.   | Can you spell that?                                 |
| 12 | Α.   | L-A-T I can't remember if it's E or A M I           |
| 13 | have   | to do it this way.                                  |
| 14 | Q.   | Go ahead.   |
| 15 | Α.   | Okay. L-A-T-A-M-E-L.                                |
| 16 | Q.   | Does Nintendo of America purchase the systems for   |
| 17 | Ninte  | ndo Canada and then they are directly shipped from  |
| 18 | Japan  | to Canada?  |
| 19 | Α.   | No.   |
| 20 | Q.   | They're shipped through Nintendo of America?        |
| 21 | Α.   | Correct.  |
| 22 | Q.   | What entity handles Latin America?                  |
| 23 | Α.   | Excuse me?  |
| 24 | Q.   | What entity handles the distribution in Latin       |
| 25 | Ameri  | ca?   |

Г

|    | 956   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1  | A. Our distributor, Latamel.                          |  |
| 2  | Q. So, Latamel handles Mexico, South America, the     |  |
| 3  | continent and country?                                |  |
| 4  | A. All of Latin America.                              |  |
| 5  | Q. Okay.  |  |
| 6  | A. Right.   |  |
| 7  | Q. Is that the same as Nintendo Canada in that        |  |
| 8  | Nintendo of America orders it and then distributes it |  |
| 9  | to distributes it to Latamel?                         |  |
| 10 | A. Correct.   |  |
| 11 | Q. What is the Wii's selling price in the United      |  |
| 12 | States?   |  |
| 13 | A. Two hundred forty-nine.                            |  |
| 14 | Q. When it says under "Accessories" it says:          |  |
| 15 | Controller orange D-O-L-T-R-I. Do you know what that  |  |
| 16 | is?   |  |
| 17 | A. Trilingual, meaning we had three different         |  |
| 18 | languages on the packaging.                           |  |
| 19 | Q. Oh. Do you know what languages those were?         |  |
| 20 | A. English, Spanish, and French.                      |  |
| 21 | Q. Were those sold in a specific geography or         |  |
| 22 | A. It made it easier for us to sell one product into  |  |
| 23 | Canada and not have to have a French product and an   |  |
| 24 | English product.                                      |  |
| 25 | Q. Would the packaging for all those products be made |  |
|    |   |  |

Г

|    |   | 95' |
|----|---|-----|
| 1  | in America and then distributed to Canada?            |     |
| 2  | A. We packaged the accessories in the U.S.            |     |
| 3  | Q. The Wii system is sold with a Nunchuk and a Wii    |     |
| 4  | Remote every time?                                    |     |
| 5  | A. Every time.  |     |
| 6  | MR. CASSADY: Just one last video from us.             |     |
| 7  | Let's see. This is Mr. Albert Penello. He is the      |     |
| 8  | director of marketing at Microsoft, and he's going to |     |
| 9  | talk generally about how video games have become more |     |
| 10 | complicated that's first and, second, how Sony        |     |
| 11 | made a mistake by removing the force feedback feature |     |
| 12 | from their controllers and subsequently added it back |     |
| 13 | in.   |     |
| 14 | DEPOSITION TESTIMONY OF ALBERT PENELLO                |     |
| 15 | Q. Can you state your name for the record?            |     |
| 16 | A. Albert John Penello, Jr.                           |     |
| 17 | Q. What is your current title?                        |     |
| 18 | A. Director of marketing.                             |     |
| 19 | Q. Director of marketing.                             |     |
| 20 | What all does that entail?                            |     |
| 21 | A. I'm in charge of marketing for the Xbox hardware   | 1   |
| 22 | the console and accessories.                          |     |
| 23 | Q. How long have you been at Microsoft?               |     |
| 24 | A. About seven years.                                 |     |
| 25 | Q. Do you think games have gotten more complicated    | or  |
|    |   |     |

|    | 958  |
|----|--|
| 1  | less complicated over time?                              |
| 2  | A. I think it's fair to say that they're probably more   |
| 3  | complicated now.   |
| 4  | Q. Do you think this kind of press about the lack of     |
| 5  | force feedback that's included throughout this exhibit   |
| 6  | is a has a negative impact on Sony's image in the        |
| 7  | gaming industry?   |
| 8  | A. I think Sony is I think Sony has made a series        |
| 9  | of missteps that has attributed to the perception that   |
| 10 | it has in the industry. I think taking out vibration     |
| 11 | was probably one of those things because, again, most of |
| 12 | the things in this exhibit have it, along with a variety |
| 13 | of list of other complaints.                             |
| 14 | Q. Do you think this kind of press helps Sony's          |
| 15 | inability to sell systems right now?                     |
| 16 | A. I think it probably doesn't.                          |
| 17 | Q. Is NPD data reliable data?                            |
| 18 | A. It's consistent; so, it's what the industry uses.     |
| 19 | MR. CAWLEY: Your Honor, with that, Anascape              |
| 20 | rests.   |
| 21 | THE COURT: All right. Ladies and gentlemen,              |
| 22 | we're going to go ahead and take a break. I'll ask you   |
| 23 | to be back at 20 of.                                     |
| 24 | Even though plaintiff has rested, the case is            |
| 25 | not over. Defendant still has to put on its case. So,    |
|    |  |

keep an open mind. Don't discuss the case even among 1 2 yoursel ves. 3 (The jury exits the courtroom, 2:21 p.m.) THE COURT: All right. Any motions? 4 5 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, Nintendo does have 6 motions under Rule 50. We've made them in writing and 7 are prepared to hand them to the court at this time. 8 THE COURT: Okay. If you'll do that. 9 MR. GUNTHER: May I approach? THE COURT: 10 Please. 11 MR. GUNTHER: Thank you. I'll hand up two Thank you. copi es. 12 13 THE COURT: All right. Very quickly, this is on page 6. I thought the only claims we had right now 14 15 are that the Wii infringed 19. Is there something still standing about the Wii Classic and Wii Remote infringing 16 17 22 or 23? MR. BLANK: That's our understanding of the 18 19 current assertions, is that the Classic infringes 19 and 20 22. 21 THE COURT: I thought with the chart, that 22 it's 19 or nothing. 23 MR. GARZA: No. We had an exemplary chart for claim 19; but in our PowerPoint presentation, we did 24 25 present evidence on claim 22, claim 23, claim 16, and

960 claim 14 but for different --products. 1 2 THE COURT: On the Wii? 3 For the Wii Classic. MR. GARZA: THE COURT: 4 Oh, okay. All right. I thought 5 the Nunchuk. MR. GARZA: It is the Wii Classic and the Wii 6 7 Remote together. 8 THE COURT: Okay. The other question is I don't think -- can you point me to any evidence under 9 10 the doctrine of equivalents? I thought everything was 11 literal that I heard from the expert. 12 MR. GARZA: Well, your Honor, we haven't seen the end to the sensor discussion; and I think there is a 13 14 real question as to whether there is any sort of 15 argument as to whether a sensor is, you know, the entire package or whether it's the components inside the 16 accelerometer, that there's been sufficient evidence for 17 a jury to find there are no real differences between the 18 19 two such that the doctrine of equivalents would be 20 met --THE REPORTER: I'm sorry. I couldn't hear 21 22 you. 23 THE COURT: You'll have to speak into the microphone. 24 25 THE REPORTER: No real differences between

the two such that the doctrine of equivalents would be 1 2 met... 3 MR. GARZA: I meant to say "no insubstantial differences." I think that's kind of the test. 4 5 MR. BLANK: There was no testimony from Dr. Howe --6 7 THE COURT: No, I -- wait a minute. ALL I'll take a look at this, but I've got to say 8 right. 9 that my recollection of the cases is that there has to be some fairly clear testimony from an expert, not just 10 11 conclusions. I don't think he even made a conclusory statement to that effect as equivalents. There has to 12 be a showing in evidence -- to avoid summary judgment or 13 JMOL, there has to be clear evidence of this is 14 15 equivalent to that. You can't just have a general -- or generalized kind of equivalents. It's got to be this 16 item is equivalent to that item. 17 18 But let me take a look at the motion. And if 19 you've got some authority to the contrary to what I just said, let me know about it. I'll take the rest of it --20 I'll reserve my ruling on the entire motion at this 21 22 time; but in all fairness, if you don't have some 23 authority or can't point me to something else, equivalents is not your strongest argument. That's the 24 25 best way to put it.

961

962 MR. GARZA: We'll have it to you submitted by 1 2 Monday, judge. 3 THE COURT: All right. We're in recess, then, until 20 of. 4 5 (Recess, 2:26 p.m. to 2:39 p.m.) 6 (Open court, all parties present, jury 7 present.) 8 (The oath is administered.) 9 Go ahead, counsel. THE COURT: MR. GERMER: Your Honor, may I make a 10 11 brief --12 THE COURT: You may. 13 MR. GERMER: -- opening? 14 Thank you. 15 Ladies and gentlemen, we're going to call as our first witness in the case Jacqualee Story. She is 16 with Nintendo from Redmond, Washington. You saw some of 17 She's going to tell us a little bit about 18 the games. 19 the background of Nintendo and some of the products that they make. You've already heard some detailed testimony 20 from Mr. Ikeda, and you'll hear more detailed testimony 21 22 later in our case about the products we're talking about. One thing Ms. Story will not be talking about 23 is -- you've heard the last few witnesses, they get 24 25 asked their age. I have been told that I am not to

> Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

Г

|    | 963   |
|----|---|
| 1  | inquire about her age; so, you will not hear that.    |
| 2  | DIRECT EXAMINATION OF JACQUALEE STORY                 |
| 3  | CALLED ON BEHALF OF THE DEFENDANT                     |
| 4  | BY MR. GERMER:  |
| 5  | Q. Would you state your name, please, ma'am?          |
| 6  | A. Sure. My name is Jacqualee Story.                  |
| 7  | Q. Ms. Story, what do you do at Nintendo?             |
| 8  | A. I'm executive vice-president of business affairs,  |
| 9  | and I've been there for 18 years.                     |
| 10 | Q. Have you been executive vice-president that entire |
| 11 | time?   |
| 12 | A. No. I started out as assistant general counsel and |
| 13 | then in the mid 1990s I became general counsel and    |
| 14 | vice-president and then in 1999 I became executive    |
| 15 | vice-president of business affairs.                   |
| 16 | Q. Ms. Story, I want to start out by talking about    |
| 17 | your history briefly; and then we'll talk about       |
| 18 | Nintendo. Where are you from?                         |
| 19 | A. I grew up in a small town in Oregon called         |
| 20 | "Tangent"; and I now live in New Castle, Washington,  |
| 21 | which is a suburb of Seattle.                         |
| 22 | Q. Are you married?                                   |
| 23 | A. I am. My husband's Terry.                          |
| 24 | Q. Do you have any children?                          |
| 25 | A. I have two boys, Reid and Ryan, ages 11 and 15.    |

964 Q. Do they apply Nintendo games? 1 2 Α. They sure do. 3 0. Do you let them play any other games? Well, if they wanted; but they choose Nintendo 4 Α. 5 games. 6 Q. All right. They're very smart young men, 7 obvi ously. 8 Could you tell us about your educational background, starting with high school? 9 So, I graduated from West Albany High School 10 Α. Sure. 11 in Albany, Oregon. After that I went to Willamette University that's located in Salem, Oregon. And then I 12 attended the University of Washington Law School and got 13 my law degree in 1985. 14 15 0. Now, was your first job out of law school with Nintendo? 16 17 I worked for a law firm for about four years A No. before joining Nintendo. 18 19 Q. Okay. You said you were the executive 20 vice-president of business affairs. What are your responsibilities in that job? 21 22 I'm a member of the executive team, and we handle Α. 23 the day-to-day business affairs for Nintendo of America. 24 Q. And how many people are on the executive team? 25 Seven. Α.

|    | C0 2  |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Do you hold any other positions at Nintendo?         |
| 2  | A. I'm also the vice-president of Retro Studios that    |
| 3  | was mentioned earlier today. They're located in Austin, |
| 4  | and they're what we call a "game development house."    |
| 5  | So, they develop games. And I have about 50 people.     |
| 6  | I'm also the corporate secretary for several            |
| 7  | other Nintendo-affiliated companies.                    |
| 8  | Q. Could you give us an example of a game or two that   |
| 9  | Retro of Austin has developed for the Nintendo games    |
| 10 | or the Nintendo video systems?                          |
| 11 | A. Sure. Retro has developed a series of games called   |
| 12 | "Metroid," M-E-T-R-O-I-D. And they're adventure games   |
| 13 | set in the future with a female character as the hero.  |
| 14 | Q. How did Retro of Austin come to be a part of         |
| 15 | Nintendo?   |
| 16 | A. We initially started out as a minority investor,     |
| 17 | and then over time we acquired all of the company to    |
| 18 | make it a full member of the Nintendo family.           |
| 19 | Q. And what role do you play in the business of Retro?  |
| 20 | A. As the vice-president of Retro, I provide general    |
| 21 | business guidance to the president.                     |
| 22 | Q. All right. Let's turn for a minute now and talk      |
| 23 | about the background of Nintendo. Does Nintendo of      |
| 24 | America you work for Nintendo of America?               |
| 25 | A. Correct.   |
|    |   |

|    | 900   |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Does Nintendo of America have a parent company?    |
| 2  | A. We do. Our parent company is Nintendo Company      |
| 3  | Limited; and it's located in Kyoto, Japan.            |
| 4  | Q. Could you give us some background about Nintendo   |
| 5  | Company Limited?                                      |
| 6  | A. Sure. So, Nintendo Company Limited was formed      |
| 7  | about 120 years ago. I believe it's 1889. I got the   |
| 8  | date right. 1889, about 120 years ago. And they've    |
| 9  | always, generally speaking, been in the entertainment |
| 10 | business; but they actually started as a playing card |
| 11 | company.  |
| 12 | Q. And I see up on the screen some playing cards. Are |
| 13 | these some of those original playing cards?           |
| 14 | A. They are.  |
| 15 | Q. I assume you know how to play these cards.         |
| 16 | A. These particular ones, I do not.                   |
| 17 | Q. Could you give us a little background about        |
| 18 | Nintendo of America, your direct employer?            |
| 19 | A. Sure. So, Nintendo of America our headquarters     |
| 20 | are in Redmond, Washington, which is a suburb of      |
| 21 | Seattle. We also have some very small offices in San  |
| 22 | Francisco and New York. We were incorporated in 1982, |
| 23 | and our real focus is the sales and marketing of the  |
| 24 | products in North America and South America.          |
| 25 | Q. How many employees, roughly, does Nintendo of      |
|    |   |

|    | 967  |
|----|--|
| 1  | America have?  |
| 2  | A. We have about 950 employees.                          |
| 3  | Q. And when did Nintendo begin making video games?       |
| 4  | A. Nintendo started in the business in the 1970s, and    |
| 5  | we started with arcade products. So, if you think about  |
| 6  | those upright arcades where you put in the quarters      |
| 7  | there's the picture. We started distributing these       |
| 8  | products throughout the world.                           |
| 9  | Q. And I think we have on the screen a picture of the    |
| 10 | arcade and I presume one of the games that was played?   |
| 11 | A. Yeah. Two of the more popular ones. Lots of           |
| 12 | quarters went into Donkey Kong and Mario Bros.           |
| 13 | Q. All right. Does Nintendo still make arcade games      |
| 14 | like this?   |
| 15 | A. We phased out of the arcade business and we moved     |
| 16 | towards making systems for the home that connect to your |
| 17 | television and then also the handheld or portable games. |
| 18 | Q. All right. Let's discuss those types of systems       |
| 19 | for a bit. What home game systems has Nintendo           |
| 20 | devel oped?  |
| 21 | A. So, if you look at the timeline that's up, we         |
| 22 | started in 1985 with the Nintendo Entertainment System   |
| 23 | and that one came out at a time when or it's             |
| 24 | actually it came out at a time when Atari was in the     |
| 25 | market or was in the market at the time but was          |
|    |  |

Γ

|    | 968  |
|----|--|
| 1  | really struggling. So, Nintendo introduced the Nintendo  |
| 2  | Entertainment System, which was a more complex and more  |
| 3  | powerful system than what was on the market at that      |
| 4  | time.  |
| 5  | Q. And then this slide, I believe, shows all of the      |
| 6  | games as we'll talk about them going forward, but        |
| 7  | they show different games that developed all the way up  |
| 8  | to the Wii?  |
| 9  | A. Right. So, it's a progression of the products that    |
| 10 | have come out over time. And as you can see, the Super   |
| 11 | Nintendo was the next home system, the Nintendo 64,      |
| 12 | GameCube, and Wii. And on the bottom, the Game & Watch,  |
| 13 | the Game Boy product which had many different versions,  |
| 14 | and then ultimately the Nintendo DS, which is the bottom |
| 15 | right, which is what we sell today.                      |
| 16 | Q. Now, there are a number of systems shown here.        |
| 17 | Generally speaking, how do they differ?                  |
| 18 | A. Well, each time we introduce a system, we have to     |
| 19 | come up with a way for it to be more powerful or more    |
| 20 | innovative than the last time because we want to attract |
| 21 | consumers to buy our next product.                       |
| 22 | Q. How does Nintendo go about developing these games     |
| 23 | and these systems?                                       |
| 24 | A. We, again, are looking to constantly improve upon     |
| 25 | what we've done before. So, we're constantly looking at  |
|    |  |

Г

|    | 969  |
|----|--|
| 1  | maybe the graphics or what innovation that we can bring  |
| 2  | forward.   |
| 3  | Q. Do you have a mission in terms of what you're         |
| 4  | trying to accomplish?                                    |
| 5  | A. We do. I mean, we have a corporate culture of         |
| 6  | innovation; but the way we talk about it internally, we  |
| 7  | talk about this idea that we have to surprise and        |
| 8  | delight our consumers. We have to give them something    |
| 9  | that they don't expect. So, when they hear that their    |
| 10 | friends have a system, it's all about the system. So,    |
| 11 | the way that we do that surprise element is we           |
| 12 | constantly try to innovate our products.                 |
| 13 | Q. All right. Thanks.                                    |
| 14 | Let's go back now to the NES. Tell us what               |
| 15 | the video game market was like when the NES was          |
| 16 | devel oped.  |
| 17 | A. Well, as I mentioned, this was introduced in 1985;    |
| 18 | and it was a time when there was very much a struggle in |
| 19 | the market by Atari. And, in fact, there was this        |
| 20 | perception that maybe video games were just a fad. So,   |
| 21 | when we introduced this system, it was really            |
| 22 | challenging because, frankly, consumers were starting to |
| 23 | become disillusioned and retailers were, as well.        |
| 24 | Q. So, how did the NES do in the U.S. market?            |
| 25 | A. It wound up doing really well. The Super Mario        |

|    | 970  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Bros., the Mario Bros. games that came with it was       |
| 2  | extremely popular and the system overall was extremely   |
| 3  | popular and there was the phrase people would say, "Do   |
| 4  | you play Nintendo"; and a lot of the times this is what  |
| 5  | they were talking about.                                 |
| 6  | Q. All right. Thanks.                                    |
| 7  | Going forward, can you tell us a bit about               |
| 8  | the Super NES and the N64 console systems?               |
| 9  | A. So, the Nintendo Entertainment System was what we     |
| 10 | called an 8-bit; and that related to sort of the quality |
| 11 | of the graphics on the screen. So, when we introduced    |
| 12 | the Super Nintendo Entertainment System, we wanted to    |
| 13 | make those graphics even better because we wanted richer |
| 14 | games for the players. So, this was actually a 16-bit    |
| 15 | system, again, an improvement of the graphics            |
| 16 | capability.  |
| 17 | Q. Now, that was the Super NES?                          |
| 18 | A. That was the Super NES.                               |
| 19 | Q. And then were there other functions added to it?      |
| 20 | A. Well, obviously there were changes to the             |
| 21 | controller, as well.                                     |
| 22 | Q. Okay. And, then, what about the N64? We've heard      |
| 23 | a little bit about that earlier.                         |
| 24 | A. Right. When we talk about the N64 internally, we      |
| 25 | talk about it being very revolutionary compared to just  |
|    |  |

|    | 971  |
|----|--|
| 1  | the next step. And I think we saw the demonstration      |
| 2  | that kind of said it all. But it was all about this 3-D  |
| 3  | experience, where you felt like you could really move    |
| 4  | around in the world, or in the video game world.         |
| 5  | Q. You mentioned 3-D, and we've heard about 3-D          |
| 6  | graphics. What do you mean by that?                      |
| 7  | A. I'm just using that as a layperson's term, meaning    |
| 8  | I can control the character in this sort of virtual-type |
| 9  | environment, just like we saw Mario entering the castle. |
| 10 | Q. Now, is Nintendo the only company that develops       |
| 11 | these game systems?                                      |
| 12 | A. No. We have very strong competitors. Over time        |
| 13 | Sega has been a competitor. Sony has been a competitor   |
| 14 | and certainly still is a competitor, as well as          |
| 15 | Microsoft.   |
| 16 | Q. We talked about some of these console systems along   |
| 17 | kind of the top. What else do we have here on the        |
| 18 | slide?   |
| 19 | A. Again, just like we were constantly trying to         |
| 20 | innovate for our home systems, we were also trying to    |
| 21 | constantly innovate for our handheld systems. So, those  |
| 22 | are the ones on the bottom. These are the ones that      |
| 23 | maybe your kids take when you have the long car ride and |
| 24 | they're in the backseat.                                 |
| 25 | So, we started with Game & Watch. And I know             |

|    | 972   |
|----|---|
| 1  | it looks fairly simple now, but at the time it was      |
| 2  | amazing. And it was a dedicated game inside that        |
| 3  | particular product.                                     |
| 4  | Q. And did those games continue to develop over the     |
| 5  | years?  |
| 6  | A. They did. So, then you move to the next one, Game    |
| 7  | Boy, which I believe there's been some testimony about. |
| 8  | Again, the Game Boy system has had several evolutions.  |
| 9  | This was the first one, Dot Matrix Game. The reason it  |
| 10 | was very innovative is it wasn't a dedicated game       |
| 11 | inside; but it was you know, you could take three       |
| 12 | games with you because the games were on a cartridge.   |
| 13 | And that was that was a great aspect of it.             |
| 14 | We improved upon this one. We had Game Boy              |
| 15 | Color so, the screen was in color Game Boy              |
| 16 | Advance. So, we had many different versions of Game Boy |
| 17 | over time.  |
| 18 | Q. And has anything come out in the handheld system     |
| 19 | after the Game Boy system?                              |
| 20 | A. So, the one that we currently have out in the        |
| 21 | marketplace is the Nintendo DS. And, again, we're       |
| 22 | trying to innovate; and, so, the idea was developed of  |
| 23 | these two screens so you can actually have game play on |
| 24 | both screens or, say, you can have a map of your world  |
| 25 | on the top and the game on the bottom. And then you see |

that little thing that looks like a pen. Instead of 1 2 just manipulating the buttons on the DS, you have this 3 thing called a "stylus." 4 So, how that would get used is we have a game 5 called "Nintendogs" where you own a dog and you use the little stylus to scratch its back or flick it and the 6 ball -- you can throw the ball for your pet dog. 7 8 All right. Thanks. 0. 9 You said that Nintendo has developed these games over the years. What exactly does that involve 10 11 for Nintendo to develop these? 12 In terms of the games themselves? Α. 13 0. Yes. The game development process -- I think 14 Α. Okav. 15 maybe a lot of people feel like it's an easy process; but it's actually a really, really lengthy process. 16 So, for games like Super Mario Galaxy that's been 17 demonstrated earlier, it can take a team of 50 to a 18 19 hundred people a couple of years to design and develop 20 those games. There's game designers, producers, 21 artists, programmers. It's a very, very involved 22 process. 23 Q. You mentioned Super Mario. What are some of the other significant games that Nintendo has developed? 24 25 Α. Well, a lot of the games that we've sold a lot of

| 1  | revolve around certain what we call "franchise           |
|----|--|
| 2  | characters," which are characters that have maybe        |
| 3  | evolved over time. But, as shown on the screen, these    |
| 4  | are the ones that show up in those games that have sold  |
| 5  | really well for us.                                      |
| 6  | And the reason the characters are significant            |
| 7  | is because as kids or adults, they start to identify     |
| 8  | with a character. So, in the upper left you have Link,   |
| 9  | who happens to, you know, ride a horse, do some fishing, |
| 10 | and go through castles; and he's trying to, you know,    |
| 11 | solve certain puzzles.                                   |
| 12 | You are Mario, who may be in the castle; and             |
| 13 | then in the next game he may be Mario Strikers where     |
| 14 | he's a soccer player.                                    |
| 15 | Another example is the bottom right, Samus.              |
| 16 | I mentioned this company in Austin. They have that       |
| 17 | particular character in this adventure series.           |
| 18 | Q. All right. Thanks.                                    |
| 19 | I want to talk now about sort of the last two            |
| 20 | systems, the one involved here, the GameCube and the     |
| 21 | Wii. On the GameCube controller, is it your              |
| 22 | understanding that that's been accused of infringing     |
| 23 | this '700 patent we've heard about?                      |
| 24 | A. That's my understanding.                              |
| 25 | Q. Could you tell us a little bit about the GameCube?    |
|    |  |

974

| 1  | A. So, as we migrated from the Nintendo 64 to the        |
|----|--|
| 2  | GameCube, we moved from cartridges that were bigger to a |
| 3  | disk that looks almost sort of like a music CD. We       |
| 4  | also obviously, there are some additional buttons on     |
| 5  | the controller. I know that's been talked about. And     |
| 6  | then we improved the graphics capability. It wasn't a    |
| 7  | huge leap forward, but we did improve on the graphics.   |
| 8  | Q. Now, was the GameCube a success?                      |
| 9  | A. It sold okay. Maybe not, frankly, as we would like    |
| 10 | it to be.  |
| 11 | Q. How would you compare it to, say, the N64 that came   |
| 12 | before it?   |
| 13 | A. Well, when I think about it, the N64 was this sort    |
| 14 | of revolutionary step forward, I mean, dramatically      |
| 15 | different. When people bought the system, it was kind    |
| 16 | of that big wow factor.                                  |
| 17 | When people bought this one, it was a little             |
| 18 | bit more about, oh, I have some added graphics; and it's |
| 19 | sort of an evolution versus a revolution, is the way I   |
| 20 | think about it.  |
| 21 | Q. All right. Does Nintendo still sell the GameCube      |
| 22 | in the U.S.?   |
| 23 | A. We basically phased out the hardware. The             |
| 24 | controllers we are still selling some of the             |
| 25 | controllers. And the games, we have very limited         |
|    |  |

975
# Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 576  |
|----|--|
| 1  | inventory that we're selling off of the games. The       |
| 2  | games do apply on the Wii because the Wii is what we     |
| 3  | call "backward compatible."                              |
| 4  | Q. All right. Then, finally, let's talk about the        |
| 5  | Wii. First of all, can you tell us where in the world    |
| 6  | did the name Wii come from?                              |
| 7  | A. Well, I get that question a lot; and sometimes        |
| 8  | people think that it comes it's a Japanese word. But     |
| 9  | it actually comes from the English word W-E. And it      |
| 10 | means it's a system for everybody, and it means          |
| 11 | everybody comes together to play. It's this inclusive    |
| 12 | word of "we" are all together playing.                   |
| 13 | And then the idea was to change the selling              |
| 14 | to I-I because it suggests two people coming together to |
| 15 | play, like the dots on the Is are the head of the        |
| 16 | people.  |
| 17 | Q. All right. Tell us a little about the Wii itself.     |
| 18 | A. Well, I think we've heard a lot about it; but we      |
| 19 | consider it one of those leaps that's really             |
| 20 | revolutionary. Obviously, with the Wii Remote in         |
| 21 | particular, you can do all those great things like       |
| 22 | Mr. Ikeda demonstrated for us. You know, you can swing   |
| 23 | the bat; and you can bowl the ball. It was just an       |
| 24 | experience that people never had before.                 |
| 25 | Q. Now, is it your understanding that Anascape has       |

976

977 accused the Wii in this case of infringing the '700 1 2 patent? 3 Α. That's my understanding. What is that up on the screen that the jury is now 4 0. looking at? 5 That's the Wii Remote. 6 Α. 7 Tell us a little bit about that, please. 0. 8 Well, again, I think we've heard about the motion Α. 9 sensing technology inside. And what's really happened is that people are sort of getting up off the couch and 10 11 really getting active because they're using that Wii Remote as we saw it demonstrated. 12 13 Has Nintendo produced any promotional videos about 0. the Wii? 14 15 Α. We have. And I know we're about to show one. Ιt shows a couple of the games, in particular, I believe 16 that did not get demonstrated. I don't think we saw 17 either the tennis or the golf. 18 19 Q. All right. Hopefully, we will go to that at this 20 time. 21 Α. Thank you. 22 (Video presentation to the jury.) 23 BY MR. GERMER: 24 All right. What do you think that shows? What did Q. we just see? 25

# Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 978  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Well, one of the things that we really tried to do    |
| 2  | is attract new audiences to this product. We really      |
| 3  | wanted people who had never played games before to enjoy |
| 4  | our product. And internally we talk about selling to     |
| 5  | folks 5 to 95; and that was a pretty dramatic idea at    |
| 6  | the time, that we were going to actually get, you know,  |
| 7  | multigenerations to play together. But it's actually     |
| 8  | happening. My mom's 82, and she plays bowling with my    |
| 9  | 10-year-old. And it's pretty unusual to have a           |
| 10 | product at least in the video game business where        |
| 11 | different generations can play together and have a       |
| 12 | really good time.  |
| 13 | Q. So, it looks like the kind of product where even I    |
| 14 | might have a chance of keeping up with my kids or        |
| 15 | grandki ds?  |
| 16 | A. You do have a chance, yes.                            |
| 17 | Q. All right. Not much but a little bit.                 |
| 18 | Has the Wii been a success in the market?                |
| 19 | A. It's been very successful.                            |
| 20 | Q. Do you play the Wii yourself with your family?        |
| 21 | A. I do.   |
| 22 | Q. Is there any other company out there selling          |
| 23 | anything like the Wii?                                   |
| 24 | A. No.   |
| 25 | Q. Now, this commercial that we saw and you talked       |
|    |  |

|    | 979  |
|----|--|
| 1  | about it that shows a Wii being played by different      |
| 2  | people, including senior citizens, is that really        |
| 3  | happening?   |
| 4  | A. It is. We get these great letters at Nintendo, and    |
| 5  | they send us their pictures. In particular, at the       |
| 6  | retirement centers, there's these virtual bowling        |
| 7  | leagues where people are all bowling against each other. |
| 8  | Q. Does the Wii have an exercise program?                |
| 9  | A. One's coming out later this month. It's May 21st.     |
| 10 | lt's a product called "Wii Fit." And, again, I think     |
| 11 | it's another great example of our innovation. The whole  |
| 12 | idea is fitness made fun and you do different games and  |
| 13 | it's an exercise.  |
| 14 | Q. What about the use of Wii in hospitals?               |
| 15 | A. Well, a couple different examples. First of all,      |
| 16 | we've been contacted by medical some research            |
| 17 | facilities but also just hospitals in general and        |
| 18 | they're actually using the Wii for physical therapy for  |
| 19 | people who have had injuries.                            |
| 20 | Q. All right.  |
| 21 | A. We've also just something that we do on our own       |
| 22 | is we do donate some Wii systems to hospitals because it |
| 23 | takes the kids' mind off the pain.                       |
| 24 | Q. All right. Thank you.                                 |
| 25 | We've talked a lot about patents in this                 |

|    | 980  |
|----|--|
| 1  | case. Does Nintendo hold patents on its video game     |
| 2  | systems?   |
| 3  | A. We do. We have over 500 U.S. patents and many more  |
| 4  | worldwide.   |
| 5  | Q. Do any of those patents relate to the N64 that      |
| 6  | we've talked about?                                    |
| 7  | A. I think we just saw the screen. We have a hundred   |
| 8  | and  |
| 9  | Q. Yeah. You can count them up individually, or you    |
| 10 | can kind of look at the top of the screen there.       |
| 11 | A. Yeah. We have, just by way of example, 103 patents  |
| 12 | that relate to the N64.                                |
| 13 | THE COURT: Okay. Excuse me, counsel.                   |
| 14 | And just to be sure, ladies and gentlemen,             |
| 15 | the issue in this case is not going to be who has the  |
| 16 | most patents. And the fact that Nintendo has patents   |
| 17 | that may describe aspects of its product does not mean |
| 18 | that these products do or do not infringe the '700     |
| 19 | patent. Because to determine infringement you'll get   |
| 20 | this instruction later you've got to decide whether    |
| 21 | an accused Nintendo product includes each and every    |
| 22 | element of a particular claim of the '700, whether it  |
| 23 | also has a patent or not.                              |
| 24 | Go ahead, counsel.                                     |
| 25 | MR. GERMER: Thank you, your Honor.                     |

|    | 981   |
|----|---|
| 1  | BY MR. GERMER:  |
| 2  | Q. Are there any patents that Nintendo has that relate  |
| 3  | to the GameCube?  |
| 4  | A. Yes. We have 97 patents, again, that relate to the   |
| 5  | GameCube.   |
| 6  | Q. And does Nintendo have any patents that relate to    |
| 7  | the Wii?  |
| 8  | A. We have 137 and I just want to clarify. It's         |
| 9  | 137 136 applications and one that's actually issued.    |
| 10 | It takes awhile for them to go through the Patent       |
| 11 | Office; so, I want to be clear that that big number     |
| 12 | there is applications.                                  |
| 13 | Q. Good.  |
| 14 | All right. I think I can tell from your                 |
| 15 | testimony the answer to this, but how do you feel about |
| 16 | your company and its products?                          |
| 17 | A. I'm pleased that I work for a company that has       |
| 18 | really put out many, many innovative products over the  |
| 19 | years. Like Mr. Ikeda, it's great to work and be        |
| 20 | involved with a company that's about providing          |
| 21 | entertainment and especially about families coming      |
| 22 | together. I'm also just proud of the fact that we had   |
| 23 | literally thousands of employees working many years to  |
| 24 | bring Wii to the market.                                |
| 25 | Q. All right. Thank you very much. We appreciate        |

982 your testimony. 1 2 Α. Thank you. 3 THE COURT: Cross? 4 MR. BUNT: Yes, your Honor. CROSS-EXAMINATION OF JACQUALEE STORY 5 BY MR. BUNT: 6 7 0. Good afternoon, Ms. Story. Good afternoon. I don't believe we've met. 8 Α. 9 0. We have not. My name is Chris Bunt, and I practice 10 law up in Tyler. It's nice to meet you. 11 Α. Nice to meet you. 12 We've seen some of the slides that you went 0. through, and I want to talk to you about a few of the 13 issues that have come up throughout the trial. 14 15 Just to clear up one issue, there was some testimony from Mr. Ikeda, I believe, a little bit 16 17 earlier about the N64 controller. And I believe he testified that the rumble feature did not originally 18 19 come with that controller. Do you recall that 20 testimony? 21 A I do recall that testimony. 22 And it actually came out later as an add-on, where Q. you could take the Rumble Pak and insert it into the 23 controller so that it would provide vibration. 24 Do you 25 recall that?

|    | 983  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. I do. I just want to be careful that I I don't        |
| 2  | recall specifically for the U.S. market if the rumble    |
| 3  | feature was at the time we introduced or if it came      |
| 4  | later. I'm just not a hundred percent clear on that.     |
| 5  | Q. You don't recall when the rumble feature actually     |
| 6  | came out?  |
| 7  | A. I can't pull that date out of my head.                |
| 8  | MR. BUNT: Your Honor, could we have a very               |
| 9  | brief sidebar conference?                                |
| 10 | THE COURT: All right.                                    |
| 11 | (The following proceedings were conducted at             |
| 12 | sidebar with both parties represented.)                  |
| 13 | MR. BUNT: Your Honor, out of an abundance of             |
| 14 | caution, I didn't want to bring up this document because |
| 15 | it has not yet been labeled as an exhibit as far as l    |
| 16 | know; but it does list the date. It is an annual report  |
| 17 | from Nintendo. It does list the date when the Rumble     |
| 18 | Pak was introduced. Obviously, defendants have made a    |
| 19 | big issue about the N64. Mr. Gunther asked my client     |
| 20 | some questions about the fact of when it came in         |
| 21 | THE COURT: Counsel, counsel, do you want to              |
| 22 | hand it to her and see if that refreshes her memory; or  |
| 23 | what do you want to do?                                  |
| 24 | MR. BUNT: That's what I want to do, your                 |
| 25 | Honor.   |

|    | 984  |
|----|--|
| 1  | THE COURT: Any objection?                                |
| 2  | MR. GERMER: Your Honor, I have two                       |
| 3  | objections. One is he could have done this in his case.  |
| 4  | Two, this is a very limited direct, very general; so,    |
| 5  | any detail goes way beyond any direct. He's just trying  |
| 6  | to take advantage of her to get something that he didn't |
| 7  | get in before and  |
| 8  | MR. GUNTHER: Can I say one thing, your                   |
| 9  | Honor?   |
| 10 | THE COURT: Sure.   |
| 11 | MR. GUNTHER: All right. Remember, you told               |
| 12 | me the N64 isn't coming in as prior art; and I accepted  |
| 13 | that. Now what they're trying to do is make it that it   |
| 14 | isn't prior art. I mean, it's crazy. We started out,     |
| 15 | and you said what we said was                            |
| 16 | THE COURT: Well, it's not prior art; but, of             |
| 17 | course, you've harped on it. I'll say that.              |
| 18 | MR. GUNTHER: Yes. Yes. But what I was                    |
| 19 | allowed to say was at the time. And now they want to     |
| 20 | get very specific with the dates. Well, if they're       |
| 21 | going to get specific with the dates, I should be able   |
| 22 | to, too.   |
| 23 | THE COURT: What date do you want to be                   |
| 24 | specific with?   |
| 25 | MR. GUNTHER: I'd like to be specific with                |

1995, 1996, when the product was introduced. And if 1 2 they want to point out that something else was 3 introduced, that's later. But that's opening the door as far as I'm concerned, and we ought to just do it on 4 5 direct. 6 MR. CASSADY: To be fair, your Honor, he did bring up the slide. 7 THE COURT: Slow down. 8 Slow down. What is the big deal about when the rumble came in? I'm not --9 10 MR. BUNT: Well, Mr. Gunther asked my client 11 about the N64 controller with the rumble module. And he 12 said: All of that was out at the time you filed your 13 1996 application, and you do not claim to have invented that in your claim. And he said: I'm not exactly sure 14 15 on that. 16 The annual report shows that the Rumble Pak came out in 1997. That's why I want to ask her this 17 18 question. MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, my point is if I'm 19 going to have some dates, that's fine; but then they all 20 should be in. If he wants '97, then I'm entitled to 21 '95, '96. 22 23 MR. BUNT: I'm just trying to clear up the Rumble Pak, which they brought up earlier. 24 25 This is the testimony? THE COURT:

|    | 986  |
|----|--|
| 1  | MR. BUNT: This is the testimony of Brad                  |
| 2  | Armstrong in Mr. Gunther's questions to him; and that's  |
| 3  | all I wanted to ask, that brief question.                |
| 4  | MR. GERMER: But, your Honor, at the end of               |
| 5  | the day, this is a witness just a fact witness; and      |
| 6  | she doesn't know. She's already said. So, what he's      |
| 7  | trying to do is just get in something although it's      |
| 8  | not marked as an exhibit, he's just trying to get that   |
| 9  | in. So, the whole thing seems like a lost mission to     |
| 10 | me.  |
| 11 | MR. CASSADY: Your Honor, the slide he                    |
| 12 | just   |
| 13 | THE COURT: Wait a minute. Wait a minute.                 |
| 14 | We're not going to have ten different attorneys. Let's   |
| 15 | just slow down for a minute.                             |
| 16 | All right. You can ask her if she's familiar             |
| 17 | with the report the annual report, and you can show      |
| 18 | her that page and ask what it is.                        |
| 19 | You did bring it up and made a point with                |
| 20 | Mr. Armstrong at the time. They can get back I mean,     |
| 21 | even though we talked about this not being prior art, as |
| 22 | I said before and I'm not holding it against you. A      |
| 23 | lawyer is supposed to push as hard as he can. You        |
| 24 | made I recall it now a big point with                    |
| 25 | Mr. Armstrong about this is all everybody knew about     |
|    |  |

987 this before you came out even though it wasn't labeled 1 2 as prior art. You got it in. I'm going to allow a 3 rebut over that. Thank you, your Honor. 4 MR. BUNT: 5 MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, your Honor. 6 (Sidebar conference concluded. The following 7 proceedings were heard in open court.) 8 THE COURT: All right, counsel. You may 9 approach. MR. BUNT: 10 Thank you. BY MR. BUNT: 11 Ms. Story, I just handed you a document. And can 12 Q. you tell me what that is that I've handed you? 13 THE COURT: All right. Let's go ahead and 14 15 kill that, please. Why don't we go ahead and ask the questions. 16 I'm sorry. Can you repeat the question? 17 Α. 18 BY MR. BUNT: 19 Q. Yes. Can you identify what I just handed you? At the top it says "Annual Report 2006," 20 Α. Sure. with a big Nintendo logo on the front. 21 And that's the annual report of Nintendo, correct? 22 Q. 23 The annual report is put out by Nintendo Company Α. Limited, just so we're clear. 24 25 Yes, ma'am. Q.

Γ

|    | 988  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Okay.   |
| 2  | Q. And it's got a it's put out by Nintendo, and        |
| 3  | it's got a message from the president in it; is that   |
| 4  | correct?   |
| 5  | A. Let me flip forward. Yes, message from the          |
| 6  | president.   |
| 7  | Q. It's got some pictures of the Nintendo products,    |
| 8  | doesn't it?  |
| 9  | A. Correct.  |
| 10 | Q. It's got a history of the company in there?         |
| 11 | A. Most likely.  |
| 12 | Q. It also has a financial review.                     |
| 13 | A. Correct.  |
| 14 | Q. And by the way, this is not the first annual report |
| 15 | you've seen, is it?                                    |
| 16 | A. No.   |
| 17 | Q. All right. If you could take a look at the page     |
| 18 | that I've got tabbed for you.                          |
| 19 | A. Okay. I'm there.                                    |
| 20 | THE COURT: Counsel, we didn't discuss                  |
| 21 | this isn't coming in as an exhibit. You can ask the    |
| 22 | questions, get the information.                        |
| 23 | MR. BUNT: Okay. I apologize, your Honor.               |
| 24 | THE COURT: It hasn't been previously marked            |
| 25 | as an exhibit under the rules.                         |

MR. BUNT: I apologize, your Honor. 1 2 BY MR. BUNT: Under "1997," can you read the first line for me 3 0 there? 4 5 Sure. I'm glad I brought my glasses. It's very Α. 6 small. 7 It is very small, and I apologize about that. 0. So. 1997: Nintendo introduces the 8 Α. Okay. innovative Rumble Pak attachment for the Nintendo 64 9 controller which enables game players to feel vibrations 10 11 during game play. 12 Q. And just --Shall I keep going? 13 Α. Thank you. 14 Q. No. That's fine. Does that refresh your recollection as to when the Rumble Pak came out for 15 the N64 controller? 16 The reason I'm hesitating is I think Nintendo in 17 A this context -- I'm not sure if it's global Nintendo. 18 19 Sometimes in the annual report the focus is more on the Japanese market than the U.S. market, and that's my only 20 hesitation. 21 22 Let me keep reading. 23 Just to be a hundred percent certain, it would be helpful if I had, like, a sales sheet where we 24 25 were actually selling it, so I knew for U.S. market in

|    | 990   |
|----|---|
| 1  | particular.   |
| 2  | Q. Well, given the first sentence there, though,        |
| 3  | there's nothing that indicates to you that the Rumble   |
| 4  | Pak came out any earlier than 1997, is there?           |
| 5  | A. Well, again, the reason is sometimes for the         |
| 6  | Japanese market and the U.S. market, we introduce the   |
| 7  | products at different times because it's about what     |
| 8  | particular game you're introducing. So, for example,    |
| 9  | sometimes we'll introduce games earlier in the U.S. and |
| 10 | later in Japan.   |
| 11 | So, I'm just trying to be cautious that I               |
| 12 | don't know, when it says Nintendo introduces the        |
| 13 | innovative Rumble Pak for the Nintendo 64, if they're   |
| 14 | talking about Nintendo Japan or Nintendo U.S.           |
| 15 | Q. Let me see if I can be more specific.                |
| 16 | A. Okay.  |
| 17 | Q. In that first sentence it does not limit it to       |
| 18 | Japan or to America, does it?                           |
| 19 | A. No. A lot of the focus in the annual report is       |
| 20 | sometimes on the Japan side. So, I'm just telling you I |
| 21 | can't be a hundred percent certain.                     |
| 22 | Q. Okay. But you have no reason, sitting here today,    |
| 23 | to quibble with that date, do you?                      |
| 24 | A. I do only in the sense that I don't know because if  |
| 25 | they're talking about Nintendo meaning Nintendo Company |
|    |   |

1 Limited, that's different than the -- sorry -- we introduce products at different times. It doesn't 2 3 always match up. Do you recall -- when Mr. Armstrong was being 4 0. cross-examined, there were some questions asked of him 5 6 about the rumble module. Do you recall that testimony? 7 Α. In general, I do, yes. And I'll just show you. You'll see up there at the 8 0. 9 top, at line 7, it says, question by Mr. Gunther: That's a rumble module that's made to be inserted into 10 11 the Nintendo 64 controller, right? 12 And the answer was: Yes, sir. 13 Question: It's got a motor with an offset 14 weight in it, right? 15 Answer: Yes, sir. Have I read that correctly so far? 16 You have. 17 Α. And then at the bottom, line 21, the question says: 18 0. 19 And all of that was out at the time that you filed your 20 1996 application; and you do not claim to have invented 21 any of this, right? 22 l'm And the answer from Mr. Armstrong was: 23 not exactly clear on that, to tell you the truth. 24 Did I read that correctly, as well? 25 You did. Α.

# Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 992  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. So, if we take this annual report, which indicates    |
| 2  | that the Rumble Pak came out in 1997, in respect to the  |
| 3  | statement to Mr. Armstrong that it came out before his   |
| 4  | 1996 warehouse patent, that would have been an incorrect |
| 5  | statement by Mr. Gunther to Mr. Armstrong, correct?      |
| 6  | A. That's sort of a complicated set of dialogue. My      |
| 7  | only answer is the best way to refresh my recollection   |
| 8  | is a sales sheet to show when Nintendo of America sold   |
| 9  | the product. That's the best I can give you.             |
| 10 | Q. Thank you, ma'am.                                     |
| 11 | There was also some comments during the                  |
| 12 | opening statement of this case, by Nintendo, that        |
| 13 | Nintendo was not selling the GameCube anymore. And I     |
| 14 | believe you clarified that a little bit during your      |
| 15 | direct examination a moment ago.                         |
| 16 | Actually, the GameCube controller is still               |
| 17 | being sold, isn't it?                                    |
| 18 | A. Yes. So, we should be very careful about the words    |
| 19 | that we use. So, the hardware itself, which is the box,  |
| 20 | if you will, the console, we basically discontinued      |
| 21 | sales of that. The GameCube controller, we do still      |
| 22 | sell some quantities of that. The software, we're in     |
| 23 | the process we have a small amount of inventory of       |
| 24 | the software, meaning the games; and we're in the        |
| 25 | process of selling that off, as well.                    |

Γ

|    | 993  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. And just so I'm clear with my words, as well, you     |
| 2  | understand that in this case Anascape is not accusing    |
| 3  | the consoles of infringement, correct?                   |
| 4  | A. That's my understanding.                              |
| 5  | Q. And we're not accusing the games of infringement.     |
| 6  | A. That's my understanding.                              |
| 7  | Q. But what we are accusing are the GameCube             |
| 8  | controllers and the Wii controllers, correct?            |
| 9  | A. (Pausing.)  |
| 10 | Q. Well, I'll just let me just stick with the            |
| 11 | GameCube controllers. You understand that they are       |
| 12 | being accused.   |
| 13 | A. Yes. Yes, I do.                                       |
| 14 | Q. And just to be clear, you can still go out and buy    |
| 15 | those GameCube controllers, can't you?                   |
| 16 | A. You can.  |
| 17 | Q. And, in fact, you can take a GameCube controller;     |
| 18 | and you can plug it into the Wii system and play some of |
| 19 | the games with that, can't you?                          |
| 20 | A. You can.  |
| 21 | Q. To get back to that issue about what's been           |
| 22 | accused, you understand in this case that there are some |
| 23 | combinations that are being accused by Anascape.         |
| 24 | A. Correct.  |
| 25 | Q. And those combinations are: The Classic Controller    |
|    |  |

|    | 994   |
|----|---|
| 1  | in combination with the Wii Remote and the Nunchuk in   |
| 2  | combination with the Wii Remote.                        |
| 3  | A. That's my understanding.                             |
| 4  | Q. And refresh my recollection. When did the Wii        |
| 5  | system come out?  |
| 6  | A. In November, 2006.                                   |
| 7  | Q. And the Nunchuk and the Classic Controller came out  |
| 8  | at the same time, didn't they?                          |
| 9  | A. The Nunchuk definitely did; and I believe the        |
| 10 | Classic Controller was at launch, if not immediately    |
| 11 | thereafter.   |
| 12 | Q. In fact, when you buy a console, you get a Nunchuk   |
| 13 | with it, don't you?                                     |
| 14 | A. That's correct. It comes packaged with one Wii       |
| 15 | Remote and one Nunchuk.                                 |
| 16 | Q. Now, there are some games that you can just play     |
| 17 | with the Wii Remote, correct?                           |
| 18 | A. Correct.   |
| 19 | Q. So, obviously, Nintendo could have decided to just   |
| 20 | come out with the Wii Remote. They didn't have to come  |
| 21 | out with the Nunchuk, did they?                         |
| 22 | A. I guess in theory, that's correct.                   |
| 23 | Q. But I'm assuming that one of the reasons they        |
| 24 | wanted to do that was because some of the games require |
| 25 | the use of the Wii Remote and the Nunchuk, correct?     |

ſ

|    | 995  |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Yes. I think we saw a demonstration with the        |
| 2  | boxing game.   |
| 3  | Q. And some of the most successful games that Nintendo |
| 4  | sells require the use of the Wii Remote in combination |
| 5  | with the Nunchuk, don't they?                          |
| 6  | A. I believe several of the games you use in           |
| 7  | combination.   |
| 8  | Q. In fact, let's take a look at one of the slides     |
| 9  | that you showed us a moment ago. Can you identify this |
| 10 | for us one more time?                                  |
| 11 | A. Sure. This is a slide which shows what I call       |
| 12 | "Nintendo's franchise characters."                     |
| 13 | Q. And the first person up on the left-hand side, is   |
| 14 | that a young man?                                      |
| 15 | A. That's Link, yes.                                   |
| 16 | Q. Okay. And Link, I believe you said, is in the       |
| 17 | Zelda: Twilight Princess game?                         |
| 18 | A. He is in Zelda game, correct.                       |
| 19 | Q. Zelda game.   |
| 20 | A. Yes.  |
| 21 | Q. And the Zelda game has been across different        |
| 22 | consoles. It was there in the GameCube; is that right? |
| 23 | A. Yes.  |
| 24 | Q. And now it's in the Wii system, correct?            |
| 25 | A. Correct.  |
|    |  |

And the Wii system game that has Zelda is the 1 Q. 2 Zelda: Twilight Princess? 3 Α. I believe so, yes. 0. And --4 5 Α. It's the one on Wii. 6 Q. I'm sorry. What did you say? 7 Α. Yes. And that game, to play it, it requires the use of 8 Q. 9 the Nunchuk and the Wii Remote, doesn't it? I believe so. 10 Α. And that game has sold very well, hasn't it? 11 Q. It has. 12 Α. 13 And, in fact, I believe you said that this is one 0. of the franchise characters that you've got, correct? 14 15 Α. Correct. If you skip over to the fellow on the far right, 16 Q. Mario -- is that --17 Yes. 18 Α. 19 0. -- the correct name? 20 Obviously, that's a very famous character for Nintendo, isn't it? 21 22 Α. It is. 23 Q. He was there on the GameCube games, correct? 24 Α. From the very early days. 25 From the very early days. Q.

|    | 997   |
|----|---|
| 1  | And on the Wii system games, I believe we               |
| 2  | have one that's been demonstrated throughout the trial. |
| 3  | That was the Galaxy game; is that correct?              |
| 4  | A. Correct.   |
| 5  | Q. And to play that game, you have to have the Wii      |
| 6  | Remote in combination with the Nunchuk, don't you?      |
| 7  | A. I believe that's correct.                            |
| 8  | Q. And, obviously, Mario is one of the most popular     |
| 9  | characters that you've got, correct?                    |
| 10 | A. Heis.  |
| 11 | Q. And the Wii Mario Galaxy game has been a very big    |
| 12 | seller for Nintendo, hasn't it?                         |
| 13 | A. It has.  |
| 14 | Q. The fellow right down a little bit below Mario to    |
| 15 | the left, his name is Luigi. Does he show up in the     |
| 16 | Mario game, as well?                                    |
| 17 | A. I believe so. He's Mario's sidekick.                 |
| 18 | Q. And he shows up in the Wii Galaxy game?              |
| 19 | A. I'm pretty sure he's in there. That's not one that   |
| 20 | I personally play a lot, though my children do.         |
| 21 | Q. The Princess Peach, is she in the Mario Galaxy       |
| 22 | game, as well?  |
| 23 | A. I believe there's a princess in it. There are two    |
| 24 | different princesses; so, I'm not sure if it's Peach or |
| 25 | another one.  |

|    | 998   |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Okay. You don't know if that's the one that Mario    |
| 2  | is trying to rescue all of the time in the Galaxy game? |
| 3  | A. Like I said, it's a princess; but sometimes there's  |
| 4  | more than one.  |
| 5  | Q. And then the character on the bottom right-hand      |
| 6  | corner is Samus; is that correct?                       |
| 7  | A. Correct.   |
| 8  | Q. And I believe you said that came out of the that     |
| 9  | game was put together by the Retro company?             |
| 10 | A. Correct.   |
| 11 | Q. And you actually you're the vice-president over      |
| 12 | that company?   |
| 13 | A. Correct.   |
| 14 | Q. And was Samus a character for the GameCube series,   |
| 15 | as well?  |
| 16 | A. Yes.   |
| 17 | Q. And what game does she appear in on the Wii system?  |
| 18 | A. She looks quite a bit different because she wears a  |
| 19 | suit of armor.  |
| 20 | Q. Okay.  |
| 21 | A. But I believe well, she's in Metroid Prime 3.        |
| 22 | Q. All right. And to play that game, you need to use    |
| 23 | the Wii Remote and the Nunchuk, don't you?              |
| 24 | A. Yes. I believe you do.                               |
| 25 | Q. And, again, she's a very popular character,          |
|    |   |

|    | 999  |
|----|--|
| 1  | obvi ousl y?   |
| 2  | A. Sheis.  |
| 3  | Q. And the Metroid Prime 3 Wii game has sold very        |
| 4  | well, hasn't it?   |
| 5  | A. It has done well.                                     |
| 6  | Q. Okay. So, we've got, it looks like, seven             |
| 7  | characters up there; and at least five of them appear in |
| 8  | games that require the user to use the Wii Remote and    |
| 9  | the Nunchuk together; is that correct?                   |
| 10 | A. I believe so.   |
| 11 | MR. BUNT: I'll pass the witness. Thank you,              |
| 12 | ma'am.   |
| 13 | REDIRECT-EXAMINATION OF JACQUALEE STORY                  |
| 14 | BY MR. GERMER:   |
| 15 | Q. Is a big part of the Wii the games that we saw        |
| 16 | the golf, the tennis, things like that? Is that a major  |
| 17 | part of the Wii experience?                              |
| 18 | A. Absolutely. If you have a piece of hardware and as    |
| 19 | many controllers as you want, at the end of the day it's |
| 20 | all about the games.                                     |
| 21 | Q. And is it true that I don't know if "most" is         |
| 22 | correct or "a lot," but either one of those games,       |
| 23 | you end up just using the Wii controller?                |
| 24 | A. Yeah. Obviously, like the Wii Sports ones we saw,     |
| 25 | you can use the Wii Remote for hitting the baseball and  |
|    |  |

1000 for swinging the tennis racket and, for my favorite, 1 the bowling. 2 3 0. All right. I tried the bowling. It's not my favorite. 4 5 Quick question about the GameCube controllers. 6 7 Uh-huh. Α. How many of those have been sold at this time 8 0. 9 compared to, say, the Wii system? Or do you have any i dea? 10 11 Α. Well, I can only give you a general comparison. Т mean, the Wii is extremely successful; and it's -- it 12 and the DS are the major products that we're selling. 13 We are selling the GameCube controller, but it would be, 14 15 relatively speaking, in small amounts. And is it in a declining amount? 16 Q. Α. Yes. 17 Q. Thank you. 18 19 MR. GERMER: No further questions. 20 MR. BUNT: Nothing further, your Honor. THE COURT: You may step down, ma'am. 21 22 Next witness? 23 MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, Nintendo calls John Pederson. 24 25 (The oath is administered.)

MR. GUNTHER: Your Honor, may I make a brief 1 2 interim statement? 3 THE COURT: You may. MR. GUNTHER: 4 Ladies and gentlemen, Mr. Pederson is going to testify. 5 He's a senior director of technical services at Nintendo of America in 6 Redmond, Washington; and he's going to talk a little bit 7 about the video game controllers. He's also going to 8 9 talk a little bit about his background at Nintendo. He's been there for guite awhile, and he can tell you a 10 11 number of things about how the company got started. 12 One of the things he is going to tell you -and I had mentioned this in my opening statement -- is 13 how Donkey Kong got its name. 14 15 MR. CAWLEY: Your Honor, I hate to interrupt; but I'm told that there are some objections on 16 17 demonstratives that haven't been addressed yet. I don't know if we will reach those before the next break or 18 not, but I wanted to let the court know. 19 20 THE COURT: The objections are overruled. 21 MR. CAWLEY: Thank you, your Honor. 22 DIRECT EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON 23 CALLED ON BEHALF OF THE DEFENDANT BY MR. GUNTHER: 24 25 Q. Mr. Pederson, could you please introduce yourself

Γ

|    | 1002   |
|----|--|
| 1  | to the jury.   |
| 2  | A. My name is John Pederson, and I'm the senior          |
| 3  | director of technical services at Nintendo of America.   |
| 4  | Q. And how long have you worked at Nintendo of           |
| 5  | America?   |
| 6  | A. Since June of 1981.                                   |
| 7  | Q. June of 1981, you said?                               |
| 8  | A. Correct.  |
| 9  | Q. Now, sir, was Nintendo of America a large company     |
| 10 | when you started working there?                          |
| 11 | A. No. It was small. In fact, I was the second           |
| 12 | employee hired.  |
| 13 | Q. And, sir, what do you do currently as senior          |
| 14 | director of technical services at Nintendo of America?   |
| 15 | A. I oversee the repair of consumer products. So,        |
| 16 | when a consumer has a broken one of our products,        |
| 17 | they send it in for repair. I oversee those services.    |
| 18 | Q. And, sir, can you tell us: In terms of that           |
| 19 | function, how many people do you supervise?              |
| 20 | A. I have 60 employees, Nintendo of America employees,   |
| 21 | and about between 150 to 200 temporary employees.        |
| 22 | Q. And those are all people that you supervise?          |
| 23 | A. Yes.  |
| 24 | Q. Now, sir, can you tell us anything about the return   |
| 25 | rate or the quality assurance that Nintendo has in place |
|    |  |

|    | 1003  |
|----|---|
| 1  | for its products?                                       |
| 2  | A. From what I understand I've been at Nintendo for     |
| 3  | a long time; so, I haven't experienced the return rates |
| 4  | at other companies. But I've been to return seminars    |
| 5  | and heard of other companies' return rates. Ours are at |
| 6  | 2 percent or less; and many other companies are higher  |
| 7  | than that, much higher.                                 |
| 8  | Q. Now, sir, are you familiar with the Nintendo         |
| 9  | products that the Nintendo products that are sold and   |
| 10 | have been sold historically and how they work?          |
| 11 | A. Yes.   |
| 12 | Q. And what's your basis of knowledge of those          |
| 13 | products?   |
| 14 | A. Well, I need to understand how the products work so  |
| 15 | that we can properly service the products, correct any  |
| 16 | problem that exists.                                    |
| 17 | Q. Now, sir, do you, yourself, get involved in          |
| 18 | actually developing Nintendo's video game products?     |
| 19 | A. No, I do not.  |
| 20 | Q. Now, let me ask a few questions about your           |
| 21 | background and how you came to work at Nintendo. Can    |
| 22 | you please describe for us your educational background  |
| 23 | starting with high school?                              |
| 24 | A. I went to Roosevelt High School in north Seattle     |
| 25 | and graduated in 1974, and then I went on to North      |
|    |   |

# Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 1004   |
|----|--|
| 1  | Seattle Community College and received an Associate of   |
| 2  | Applied Science Degree in Electronics Engineering        |
| 3  | Technologies in '76.                                     |
| 4  | Q. That was in 1976? Let me just focus on that. That     |
| 5  | was an associate's degree, you said?                     |
| 6  | A. Correct.  |
| 7  | Q. And how many years did you take that degree?          |
| 8  | A. Two years.  |
| 9  | Q. Okay. And, sir, do you have any formal education      |
| 10 | beyond that?   |
| 11 | A. No.   |
| 12 | Q. When did you begin working at Nintendo of America?    |
| 13 | A. It was in 1981.                                       |
| 14 | Q. And, sir, when you first joined the company, what     |
| 15 | did you do?  |
| 16 | A. My job was to help customers over the phone with      |
| 17 | the repair of the coin-operated products that we were    |
| 18 | selling at that point in time and to determine what      |
| 19 | parts they needed to actually repair those and get those |
| 20 | shipped out.   |
| 21 | Q. Now, sir, when you first started with the company     |
| 22 | in 1981, was there any other special project that you    |
| 23 | were involved with?                                      |
| 24 | A. When I started with the company, we had a stock of    |
| 25 | video games that were called "Radar Scope."              |

# Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 1005   |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. Now, sir, was that game, Radar Scope was that a       |
| 2  | home video game, or was it something else?               |
| 3  | A. No. It was a coin-operated video game.                |
| 4  | Q. Okay, sir. And what was the special project that      |
| 5  | you got involved in with respect to the Radar Scope      |
| 6  | coin-operated video game?                                |
| 7  | A. The Radar Scope video game had it sold very well      |
| 8  | for a short period of time; and we had a number of games |
| 9  | on the water that came to us that by the time they got   |
| 10 | to us, they wouldn't sell very well. So, we needed to    |
| 11 | actually convert those games to another game.            |
| 12 | Q. And, so, what did you do what was your                |
| 13 | involvement in that process?                             |
| 14 | A. During the day, I would actually do my normal job;    |
| 15 | and in the evenings we would go in the warehouse and     |
| 16 | actually pull out the printed circuit boards and replace |
| 17 | them with the new video game boards.                     |
| 18 | Q. What was the new video game that Nintendo developed   |
| 19 | to replace the Radar Scope boards?                       |
| 20 | A. That was Donkey Kong.                                 |
| 21 | Q. And, sir, did that become a successful                |
| 22 | coin-operated video game?                                |
| 23 | A. Yes, second only to Pac-Man.                          |
| 24 | Q. Has it become a successful home video game?           |
| 25 | A. Yes.  |

|    | 1006  |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. And, sir, can you tell us how Nintendo came up with  |
| 2  | the name for Donkey Kong?                               |
| 3  | A. My understanding is that it's a sort of loose        |
| 4  | translation of stubborn monkey and we thought it was    |
| 5  | kind of a silly name when we heard it first but         |
| 6  | Q. Was that a name that folks came up with in the       |
| 7  | United States?  |
| 8  | A. No. It was done in Japan.                            |
| 9  | THE COURT: All right. Counsel, we're going              |
| 10 | to take a break.  |
| 11 | Ladies and gentlemen, I'm going to excuse you           |
| 12 | until ten of.   |
| 13 | (The jury exits the courtroom, 3:34 p.m.)               |
| 14 | THE COURT: We'll be in recess until ten of.             |
| 15 | (Recess, 3:34 p.m. to 3:49 p.m.)                        |
| 16 | (Open court, all parties present, jury                  |
| 17 | present.)   |
| 18 | THE COURT: Counsel, go ahead.                           |
| 19 | MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, your Honor.                     |
| 20 | BY MR. GUNTHER:   |
| 21 | Q. Mr. Pederson, before the break, you testified that   |
| 22 | you started at Nintendo of America in 1981 as technical |
| 23 | services manager; and today you are senior director of  |
| 24 | technical services, managing some 260 people. Can you   |
| 25 | tell us how your duties have evolved over that time     |
|    |   |

Γ

|    | 100  |
|----|--|
| 1  | period?  |
| 2  | A. In the beginning I was working on strictly          |
| 3  | coin-operated video games because that was the product |
| 4  | line that we had. And as time went on, we introduced   |
| 5  | home video games; and, you know, my job evolved to     |
| 6  | include those new products as they came along.         |
| 7  | Q. How did your job change in terms of the volume of   |
| 8  | products?  |
| 9  | A. Well, the sheer volume of products is very large    |
| 10 | currently. We had been selling about I think it was    |
| 11 | Donkey Kong coin-operated video game, within a year we |
| 12 | sold about 65,000 pieces. Now we talk about selling,   |
| 13 | you know, as many as 5 or 6 million pieces of video    |
| 14 | games a year of one product line.                      |
| 15 | Q. Now, Mr. Pederson, Ms. Story talked a little bit    |
| 16 | about the Nintendo video game systems on sort of a     |
| 17 | general level. I'd like to focus with you a little bit |
| 18 | on the evolution of the controllers for the Nintendo   |
| 19 | video game systems.                                    |
| 20 | A. Okay.   |
| 21 | MR. GUNTHER: Could we put up the first                 |
| 22 | slide?   |
| 23 | BY MR. GUNTHER:  |
| 24 | Q. And can you identify the controllers that are on    |
| 25 | this slide for us?                                     |

|    | 1008  |
|----|---|
| 1  | A. Yes. Starting with the upper left-hand corner,       |
| 2  | that was the Donkey Kong Game & Watch. And it was a     |
| 3  | handheld dedicated video game that only had one game in |
| 4  | it.   |
| 5  | The second one is the Nintendo Entertainment            |
| 6  | System, also referred to as the "NES."                  |
| 7  | Q. Is that the controller for that system?              |
| 8  | A. That's the controller, correct.                      |
| 9  | Q. Okay.  |
| 10 | A. And then the third one on the top is the Game Boy    |
| 11 | video game system, which was a handheld video game      |
| 12 | system, again; but it accepted cartridges. So, it       |
| 13 | wasn't dedicated to just one game.                      |
| 14 | And then along the bottom, the first one on             |
| 15 | the left-hand side is the Super Nintendo, or Super NES  |
| 16 | which it was sometimes referred to, which was our next  |
| 17 | generation of home video games past the NES.            |
| 18 | And then next one is the Nintendo 64, which             |
| 19 | was introduced after that.                              |
| 20 | And then the Nintendo GameCube controller               |
| 21 | after that and currently the Wii.                       |
| 22 | Q. Okay. Now, sir, generally speaking, how have         |
| 23 | Nintendo's controllers changed over time?               |
| 24 | A. Well, they've really evolved. You know, some of      |
| 25 | the features that we had way back from the Game & Watch |

# Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 1009   |
|----|--|
| 1  | to what we have today have been incorporated, but        |
| 2  | there's been additions along the way.                    |
| 3  | Q. All right. Let's focus, if we can, on the first       |
| 4  | product, the Game & Watch. And can you tell us about     |
| 5  | the controls for that product?                           |
| 6  | A. It had two controls, one on the left side and one     |
| 7  | on the right side. And the one on the left side is what  |
| 8  | we call a "cross pad."                                   |
| 9  | Q. Yeah. Let me stop you right there. We also know       |
| 10 | that there is a cross pad of some type on the Wii Remote |
| 11 | and the GameCube; is that correct?                       |
| 12 | A. Correct.  |
| 13 | Q. All right. Now, sir, how does this cross pad          |
| 14 | compare with those?                                      |
| 15 | A. In design it's virtually the same, just slightly      |
| 16 | different in size.                                       |
| 17 | Q. Can you describe that design? And I'm talking         |
| 18 | about the cross pad itself and then the sensors          |
| 19 | underneath.  |
| 20 | A. The cross pad itself is actually a bit of a rocker.   |
| 21 | And when you push on either left/right or up/down, it    |
| 22 | actually depresses a silicone rubber contact underneath  |
| 23 | it that then contacts the PC board and makes the switch  |
| 24 | which tells the microcomputer which direction to move    |
| 25 | the character.   |
|    |  |

|    | 101  |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. So, if we look at that cross-switch or that cross     |
| 2  | pad, is there a sensor underneath that part of the       |
| 3  | cross-switch?  |
| 4  | A. Yes, there is.  |
| 5  | Q. And is there a sensor sort of in each of the four     |
| 6  | corners?   |
| 7  | A. Exactly.  |
| 8  | Q. And have you heard the term "unidirectional           |
| 9  | sensor"?   |
| 10 | A. Yes.  |
| 11 | Q. Are the sensors underneath the four points of the     |
| 12 | cross pad unidirectional sensors?                        |
| 13 | A. Well, each one of the sensors, like I said, tells     |
| 14 | the microcomputer which direction to move the character. |
| 15 | So, you've got four sensors there.                       |
| 16 | Q. Now, how about the other parts of the the             |
| 17 | controller parts of the Game & Watch? Can you describe   |
| 18 | those for us?  |
| 19 | A. On the right-hand side, there is one button. This     |
| 20 | game was relatively simple. It had a jump, and the       |
| 21 | character Mario would just simply jump.                  |
| 22 | Q. Let me just stop you right there. That's this         |
| 23 | button right here (indicating)?                          |
| 24 | A. Correct.  |
| 25 | Q. It says "jump" underneath?                            |

| <ul> <li>A. Correct.</li> <li>Q. Okay.</li> <li>A. Above that are three buttons. The first one at the</li> </ul> |
|--|
| <ul><li>Q. Okay.</li><li>A. Above that are three buttons. The first one at the</li></ul>                         |
| A. Above that are three buttons. The first one at the  |
|  |
| top is Game A and Game B. That's how you would select  |
| the difficulty level of the game. And that would   |
| determine the speed at which the barrels came down the   |
| game and so forth.   |
| And then the third button actually displayed   |
| the time, which was the watch function of the Game &   |
| Watch?   |
| Q. Okay. Now, sir, the next controller in the  |
| timeline is the Nintendo Entertainment System  |
| controller. Can you tell us, sir, how the controller   |
| functions with respect to that system as compared, for   |
| example, to the Game & Watch?  |
| A. Well, it included the cross pad again.  |
| Q. Okay. So, over here on your left (indicating) is  |
| the cross pad?   |
| A. Right.  |
| And it also had the instead of just one  |
| button, it had the A and B button on the right-hand  |
| side.  |
| Q. Am I just pointing (indicating) to those right now?   |
|  |
| A. Correct.  |
|  |
|    | 1012  |
|----|---|
| 1  | A. And then it had start/select buttons in the center.  |
| 2  | Q. Now, sir, the cross-switch in terms of structure     |
| 3  | and function, is that similar or different from the     |
| 4  | cross-switch that was present in the Game & Watch       |
| 5  | system?   |
| 6  | A. Very similar, just as I said before, just            |
| 7  | different in size.                                      |
| 8  | Q. Now, sir, let me just ask you this question in       |
| 9  | terms of added there are some more buttons on this      |
| 10 | one than there were as compared to the Game & Watch. Is |
| 11 | there a reason for that?                                |
| 12 | A. Well, this system was a cartridge-based system.      |
| 13 | So, it allowed different games to be inserted into the  |
| 14 | console. And, so, the buttons we needed more buttons    |
| 15 | to accommodate the different types of games.            |
| 16 | Q. And, sir, was this a more powerful or less powerful  |
| 17 | system than the Game & Watch?                           |
| 18 | A. Much more powerful. In fact, it was equivalent to    |
| 19 | arcade style games of the year.                         |
| 20 | Q. Okay. Let's take a look at the Game Boy. And,        |
| 21 | sir, can you compare the controller functions on the    |
| 22 | Game Boy this is a handheld system; is that correct?    |
| 23 | A. Yes.   |
| 24 | Q. And can you compare the controller functions on the  |
| 25 | Game Boy to the NES?                                    |

Γ

|    | 1013   |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. It has virtually the same controller functions; but           |
| 2  | because it was a handheld game, they narrowed the width          |
| 3  | of it. So, the start/select button dropped down below.           |
| 4  | Q. They both have a cross-switch?                                |
| 5  | A. They both have a cross-switch. They both have an A            |
| 6  | and B button.  |
| 7  | Q. And they both have start and select?                          |
| 8  | A. Correct.  |
| 9  | Q. Okay. Now, sir, let's take a look at, if we can,              |
| 10 | the Super Nintendo controller. And, sir, can you tell            |
| 11 | us, again in terms of the features and functionality of          |
| 12 | that controller, how that compared to prior controllers          |
| 13 | like the Nintendo Entertainment System controller?               |
| 14 | A. Once again, it incorporated the cross pad on the              |
| 15 | left-hand side, had the select and start buttons as              |
| 16 | before. It also had the A and B buttons; but they                |
| 17 | actually added four new buttons to the controller, the ${\tt X}$ |
| 18 | and Y and then also the two shoulder buttons.                    |
| 19 | Q. Now, sir, I'm pointing up on the top (indicating).            |
| 20 | Can you tell us what that is? It's a little bit                  |
| 21 | A. That's the shoulder buttons.                                  |
| 22 | Q. All right. And there was one on each side?                    |
| 23 | A. Correct.  |
| 24 | Q. And, sir, can you tell us why there was added                 |
| 25 | functionality in the Super Nintendo system as compared           |

|    | 1014   |
|----|--|
| 1  | to the Nintendo Entertainment System?                    |
| 2  | A. Well, as the game systems got more sophisticated,     |
| 3  | they added more control features to the controller so    |
| 4  | that the game developers could have more flexibility in  |
| 5  | developing these more complex games.                     |
| 6  | Q. And how about the power of those two systems? Can     |
| 7  | you compare them?  |
| 8  | A. Well, the Super Nintendo was a 16-bit system as       |
| 9  | compared to the regular system as an 8-bit system. So,   |
| 10 | it was more than two times powerful.                     |
| 11 | Q. And, sir, did that increase in power have an impact   |
| 12 | on the number of functions and features on the Super NES |
| 13 | controller?  |
| 14 | A. Yes, because, you know, you could program in more     |
| 15 | complex game play with a higher-power machine; and that  |
| 16 | called for the ability to actually have more             |
| 17 | functionality in the controller.                         |
| 18 | MR. GUNTHER: Let's put up the next slide,                |
| 19 | which is the controller for the Nintendo 64 system.      |
| 20 | BY MR. GUNTHER:  |
| 21 | Q. Do you see that?                                      |
| 22 | A. Yes.  |
| 23 | Q. Now, sir, can you compare that to the controller      |
| 24 | for the Super Nintendo system?                           |
| 25 | A. Again, it had the cross pad on the left-hand side     |
|    |  |

|    | 1015   |
|----|--|
| 1  | (indicating).  |
| 2  | Q. Right.  |
| 3  | A. And in the very center, it's got a start button     |
| 4  | (indicating). It does not have a select button.        |
| 5  | Q. Can I ask you this, sir? I'm interrupting you.      |
| 6  | l'm sorry.   |
| 7  | Is that the start button (indicating)?                 |
| 8  | A. Yes. The red one is the start button. Right.        |
| 9  | And then it has the A and B buttons, the               |
| 10 | green and blue.  |
| 11 | Q. Okay. So, the green and blue buttons are the A and  |
| 12 | B?   |
| 13 | A. Correct.  |
| 14 | Q. So, what we've seen so far are all features and     |
| 15 | functionality that have been on pretty much all of     |
| 16 | Nintendo's earlier controllers; is that correct?       |
| 17 | A. Right.  |
| 18 | Q. Okay.   |
| 19 | A. Right.  |
| 20 | Q. Now, how about these (indicating) yellow buttons up |
| 21 | in the corner?   |
| 22 | A. Those are called the "C buttons."                   |
| 23 | Q. And what were they about?                           |
| 24 | A. Well, in in Super Mario 64 they were used to        |
| 25 | actually change the camera angle of the viewer from    |
|    |  |

|    | 1016  |
|----|---|
| 1  | where you were looking at it from the TV screen.        |
| 2  | Q. Can you describe what you mean by that just a        |
| 3  | little bit more?  |
| 4  | A. Well, this was the first game system that actually   |
| 5  | allowed for 3-D graphics so that instead of just having |
| 6  | game play that occurred on the screen in front of you,  |
| 7  | you know, you had game play that was occurring all      |
| 8  | around you. So, you needed the ability to actually      |
| 9  | change the camera angle to see where your character was |
| 10 | at, what was going on behind him as well as to the side |
| 11 | as well as to the front.                                |
| 12 | Q. Okay. Now, how about this item right here            |
| 13 | (indicating) that I'm circling with the laser pointer?  |
| 14 | What is that?   |
| 15 | A. That's the joystick.                                 |
| 16 | Q. And can you tell us what the functionality of that   |
| 17 | was in the Nintendo 64 system?                          |
| 18 | A. Well and again I'll use Super Mario 64. Again,       |
| 19 | this was a cartridge-based system so that it could be   |
| 20 | used by the developer however they chose; but I'll use  |
| 21 | Super Mario 64 as the example. It was used to make      |
| 22 | Mario run left/right, forwards and backwards.           |
| 23 | Q. Now, sir, can you pick do you have a Nintendo 64     |
| 24 | controller up there with you?                           |
| 25 | A. Yes.   |

|    | 1017  |
|----|---|
| 1  | Q. Can you hold it up?                                  |
| 2  | A. (Complying.)   |
| 3  | Q. Sir, are there some buttons up sort of on the top    |
| 4  | of it or on the shoulders?                              |
| 5  | A. Yes. There's two shoulder buttons, a right and a     |
| 6  | left (indicating).                                      |
| 7  | Q. And can you describe the functionality of those      |
| 8  | buttons?  |
| 9  | A. Well, they were used however the game programmer     |
| 10 | decided to use them. Not being a real game player, I    |
| 11 | don't know all the functions that they were used for.   |
| 12 | Q. Okay. Now, sir, there's also a if you hold the       |
| 13 | back of it up, it looks like there is something plugged |
| 14 | into it.  |
| 15 | A. (Demonstrating.) Yes.                                |
| 16 | Q. And what is that?                                    |
| 17 | A. This is a Rumble Pak.                                |
| 18 | Q. And, sir, what was the function of that device?      |
| 19 | A. It provided feedback to the player when, for         |
| 20 | example I'll just use an example of if it was a         |
| 21 | driving game, if you were in a car crash, it would      |
| 22 | actually provide vibration to the controller.           |
| 23 | Q. Okay. Sir, do you know when the Rumble Pak,          |
| 24 | approximately, was introduced?                          |
| 25 | A. No, I don't.   |
|    |   |

1018 Can you give us anything on that? 1 Q. Okay. Other than it was after the release of the Nintendo 2 Α. 3 64, no. Right. Do you know about how long afterwards? 4 0. 5 THE COURT: Counsel, I think it's been asked and answered. 6 7 MR. GUNTHER: Yes, sir. THE COURT: If your company can't come up 8 9 with a number, we don't need a guess on it. 10 Yes, sir. Understood. MR. GUNTHER: Thank 11 you. BY MR. GUNTHER: 12 13 Now, sir, let me ask you this: In terms of the 0. controllers that we've looked at so far, which are the 14 15 NES, the Super NES, and the GameCube -- sorry -- yes, the Nintendo 64 controller, those first three that we 16 have as well as the Game & Watch and the GameCube --17 sorry -- the Game Boy -- those first five that we have 18 here -- Game & Watch, Nintendo Entertainment System, 19 20 Game Boy, Super Nintendo, and Nintendo 64 -- do each one of those have multiple input members? 21 22 Α. Yes. 23 Okay. Has Nintendo ever made a controller that Q. you're aware of that has a single input member with 24 no -- and that's it, just one single input member? 25

|    | 1019   |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. No.   |
| 2  | Q. All right. Now, sir, let me ask you this: Have      |
| 3  | the number of input members of the controllers that    |
| 4  | we've talked about changed over time?                  |
| 5  | A. Yes. They have increased.                           |
| 6  | Q. And why is that?                                    |
| 7  | A. Again, as I said before, the to allow the game      |
| 8  | programmers the ability to add more functionality into |
| 9  | the games and more variety in what they did.           |
| 10 | Q. Now, sir  |
| 11 | MR. GUNTHER: If we could go to the next                |
| 12 | slide and take a look at the GameCube controller.      |
| 13 | A. Uh-huh.   |
| 14 | BY MR. GUNTHER:  |
| 15 | Q. Sir, can you explain to us the features and         |
| 16 | functionality of that controller?                      |
| 17 | A. This controller had a on the very left-hand side    |
| 18 | had a joystick.  |
| 19 | Q. All right. Am I circling that (indicating) with     |
| 20 | the laser pointer?                                     |
| 21 | A. Yes.  |
| 22 | Q. "Yes"?  |
| 23 | A. And then there was also just down below it was a    |
| 24 | cross pad again.                                       |
| 25 | Q. All right. Is that the same type of cross pad       |
|    |  |

|    | 1020   |
|----|--|
| 1  | (indicating) going all the way back to the Game & Watch? |
| 2  | A. Same type of cross pad, correct.                      |
| 3  | Q. And how about this, sir (indicating), what I'm        |
| 4  | circling here?   |
| 5  | A. That is called a "C stick," which is another          |
| 6  | joystick.  |
| 7  | Q. Now, sir, can you compare the C stick to any          |
| 8  | functionality on the Nintendo 64 controller?             |
| 9  | A. Well, in some games it was used for the camera        |
| 10 | angle as it was done on the Nintendo 64.                 |
| 11 | Q. And, so, these buttons were the C buttons; is that    |
| 12 | correct (indicating)?                                    |
| 13 | A. Correct.  |
| 14 | Q. On the Nintendo 64?                                   |
| 15 | And this is (indicating) the camera stick,               |
| 16 | the yellow camera stick on the GameCube?                 |
| 17 | A. Yeah, the "C stick," as it's called.                  |
| 18 | Q. Okay. Now, sir, there are some buttons here that      |
| 19 | I'm circling (indicating) on the right-hand side of the  |
| 20 | controller. Can you describe those for us?               |
| 21 | A. There was an A and a B button, which are two          |
| 22 | different sizes; and then there is an X and Y button.    |
| 23 | Q. And how about up on the shoulders?                    |
| 24 | A. There's actually two shoulder buttons up there that   |
| 25 | are left and right that actually have a slider ability   |
|    |  |

|    | 1023  |
|----|---|
| 1  | to them, and then also a Z button.                      |
| 2  | Q. Now, those two up on the top, do they have the       |
| 3  | ability to produce proportional output?                 |
| 4  | A. Depending on how far you depress them, you could     |
| 5  | use that function to change how a character is moved or |
| 6  | operates on the screen.                                 |
| 7  | Q. And when you fully depress the button, is there      |
| 8  | another sensor at the bottom?                           |
| 9  | A. There is a switch at the bottom, end of travel       |
| 10 | switch.   |
| 11 | Q. Is that a unidirectional switch?                     |
| 12 | A. It's just one sensor at the bottom; so, it's         |
| 13 | Q. Okay. Now, sir, let's take a look, if we can, at     |
| 14 | the well, let me just ask you this one last question:   |
| 15 | In terms of complexity of controller functions, is the  |
| 16 | GameCube more or less complex than the N64?             |
| 17 | A. It's more complex. It has more features.             |
| 18 | Q. Is there a reason for that?                          |
| 19 | A. Again, just the evolution of the game systems and    |
| 20 | the allowed for development of the games.               |
| 21 | Q. So, is it fair to say that the GameCube has          |
| 22 | retained some of the very old features that from the    |
| 23 | very beginning, like the cross-switch and the A and B   |
| 24 | buttons, but has added additional features and          |
| 25 | functionality?  |
|    |   |

1022 Yes. 1 Α. 2 Now, sir, let's take a look, finally, at the Wii 0. 3 Remote plus the Nunchuk. Sir, can you describe -starting with the Remote, can you describe the features 4 and functionality of the Remote? 5 The Remote is the one that looks like a wand, like 6 Α. a remote controller; so, it's called a "Remote." 7 8 It has -- at the very top it's got the cross 9 pad that we've seen before. 10 Q. Right here (indicating)? Okay. Right. And then it has an A button. 11 Α. (Indicating.) 12 Q. And then below that it has a home button and a plus 13 Α. and minus button. 14 15 0. And could you just describe the functionality of those buttons? 16 The home button is used to actually return the --17 A to return to the system menu on the Wii. So, when 18 19 you're playing a game, there is a menu that you go back 20 to; and if you hit that home button, it takes you back to that menu. 21 22 Q. And there's also two buttons here Okay. 23 (indicating). Can you tell us about those? 24 Α. Those are the Buttons 1 and 2; and they are Yes. 25 used for various game play functions, depending upon the

|    | 1023   |
|----|--|
| 1  | game.  |
| 2  | Q. Okay. And, sir, if you actually we can't see          |
| 3  | it, but maybe you can hold up do you have a Remote       |
| 4  | there?   |
| 5  | A. Yes.  |
| 6  | Q. If you turn it around to the back, is there any       |
| 7  | kind of feature or functionality on the back?            |
| 8  | A. There is one button back here (indicating), as        |
| 9  | well.  |
| 10 | Q. Okay. And, sir, we've heard testimony about the       |
| 11 | Wii Remote that also has an accelerometer in it.         |
| 12 | A. Yes.  |
| 13 | Q. Now, sir, can you take us now through the Wii         |
| 14 | Nunchuk and tell us about the features and functionality |
| 15 | of that  |
| 16 | A. It has a joystick, as can be seen towards the top     |
| 17 | of that device.  |
| 18 | Q. Okay.   |
| 19 | A. And then it has two buttons on the back there and     |
| 20 | they're not that easy to see, but they're here           |
| 21 | (indicating).  |
| 22 | Q. Okay. And, sir, there's also been some testimony,     |
| 23 | I think I just want you to confirm this that there       |
| 24 | is also an accelerometer in the                          |
| 25 | A. Yes. There is also an accelerometer in that.          |

|    | 1024   |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. Mr. Pederson, can you looking from                    |
| 2  | MR. GUNTHER: Maybe we could put the first                |
| 3  | slide back up again.                                     |
| 4  | BY MR. GUNTHER:  |
| 5  | Q. If we start with the Game & Watch and going all the   |
| 6  | way through the Wii Remote plus the Nunchuk, from 1982   |
| 7  | to 2006, can you summarize for us, if you can, the       |
| 8  | changes to those controllers over the years?             |
| 9  | A. It's really been an add-on sort of evolution to       |
| 10 | those controllers. We found some functions in those      |
| 11 | controllers that work very well and then brought them    |
| 12 | forward and added features in kind of an evolutionary    |
| 13 | style.   |
| 14 | MR. GUNTHER: I pass the witness, your Honor.             |
| 15 | Thank you, Mr. Pederson.                                 |
| 16 | Your Honor, I'm sorry. I know I passed the               |
| 17 | witness. Could I just read some exhibit numbers that     |
| 18 | l've been utilizing?                                     |
| 19 | THE COURT: Go ahead.                                     |
| 20 | MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, sir.                             |
| 21 | The NES controller is Defendant's                        |
| 22 | Exhibit 216; the Game Boy is Defendant's Exhibit 308;    |
| 23 | the Super NES controller is Defendant's Exhibit 115; the |
| 24 | N64 controller is Defendant's Exhibit 118; and then the  |
| 25 | GameCube, Defendant's Exhibit 157; the Wii Remote and    |

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

1025 Nunchuk -- the Remote, Defendant's Exhibit 167; and the 1 2 Nunchuk, Defendant's Exhibit 162. 3 Thank you, your Honor. THE COURT: Mr. Cawley? 4 Thank you, your Honor. MR. CAWLEY: 5 May I pull the easel over? 6 7 THE COURT: Please. And while you're doing that, Mr. Gunther, did 8 you say one of those is Plaintiff's Exhibit 118? 9 10 MR. GUNTHER: No, your Honor. I'm sorry. I 11 may have misspoken. Let me take a look. 12 Your Honor, it's very possible I misspoke. 13 THE COURT: Okay. MR. GUNTHER: I meant to say Defendant's 14 15 Exhibit 118. THE COURT: 16 All right. 17 MR. GUNTHER: Thank you, sir. 18 MR. CAWLEY: May I proceed, your Honor? 19 THE COURT: Please. 20 MR. CAWLEY: Thank you. CROSS-EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON 21 BY MR. CAWLEY: 22 23 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Pederson. Good afternoon. 24 Α. 25 You've worked for Nintendo for around 25 years; is Q.

that right? 1 2 Α. Yeah, nearly 27. I wonder if I could get you to explain something 3 0. that's sort of been in the courtroom for a bit, but I'm 4 not sure we've had it spelled out and I want to make 5 sure there is no confusion. 6 7 The company you work for is called what? Nintendo of America, Incorporated. 8 Α. 9 So, you work for Nintendo of America. 0. And Okay. Nintendo of America is owned by what company? 10 11 Α. Nintendo Company Limited. A Japanese parent? 12 Q. 13 Α. Yes. And Nintendo Company Limited owns how much of 14 Q. Nintendo of America? 15 It's a wholly-owned subsidiary; so, it's a hundred 16 Α. percent, I believe. 17 And just to make sure we keep this straight, 18 Q. Nintendo of America is obviously the U.S.-based company, 19 correct? 20 21 A Correct. 22 Q. And Nintendo Company Limited is the Japanese 23 company? Yes. 24 Α. 25 And Mr. Ikeda, who was here with us earlier today, Q.

1027 works for Nintendo Company Limited, right? 1 2 Α. That's my understanding, yes. 3 0. In Japan. And Ms. Story, who testified just before you, 4 works for Nintendo of America, correct? 5 6 Α. Yes. 7 0. And you work for Nintendo of America. Correct. 8 Α. And it's Nintendo of America that is the defendant 9 0. in this lawsuit and that is accused of infringing the 10 11 '700 patent; is that correct? I'm not that familiar with the paperwork in the 12 Α. 13 case, I quess. I think there will be plenty of other 14 Fair enough. Q. 15 sources from which we can confirm that it's Nintendo of America that's the defendant in the lawsuit. 16 17 Now, your job is essentially to oversee the service of Nintendo products for consumers and 18 19 retailers, correct? 20 Α. Correct. And you didn't design any of the controllers that 21 0. 22 you just told us about, did you? 23 No, I did not. Α. 24 Instead, it's your Japanese parent, Nintendo Q. 25 Company Limited, that designed all those controllers; is

|    | 1028  |
|----|---|
| 1  | that accurate?  |
| 2  | A. That's my understanding.                             |
| 3  | Q. And just so there is not any confusion I think       |
| 4  | this is clear from your testimony, but I want to be     |
| 5  | sure. The GameCube controller has a motor with an       |
| 6  | eccentric weight in it that accomplishes rumble,        |
| 7  | correct?  |
| 8  | A. Yes. There is a vibration motor.                     |
| 9  | Q. And the way that vibration motor works is through a  |
| 10 | small electric motor with an offset weight on a shaft,  |
| 11 | correct?  |
| 12 | A. That's my understanding, correct.                    |
| 13 | Q. And when the motor spins, it spins that eccentric    |
| 14 | weight and causes vibration, fair?                      |
| 15 | A. Yeah. I haven't disassembled one personally, but     |
| 16 | that's my understanding.                                |
| 17 | Q. Well, would you like to see one? We happen to have   |
| 18 | a couple in the courtroom here, in case you're curious. |
| 19 | Maybe you can catch that on the way out, since I don't  |
| 20 | have any questions to ask you about it, if you're       |
| 21 | curious.  |
| 22 | And in the same way, the Wii Remote also has            |
| 23 | a motor like that that provides rumble or vibration,    |
| 24 | correct?  |
| 25 | A. Correct.   |
|    |   |

|    | 1029   |
|----|--|
| 1  | Q. Now, in the Wii controller products, a user can't     |
| 2  | use the Wii Nunchuk controller if it's not connected to  |
| 3  | the Wii Remote controller; isn't that right?             |
| 4  | A. That's correct. It has no way to communicate          |
| 5  | otherwise.   |
| 6  | Q. Okay. And in the same way, a user can't use the       |
| 7  | Wii Classic Controller if it's not connected to the Wii  |
| 8  | Remote controller.                                       |
| 9  | A. Correct. Again, for communication.                    |
| 10 | Q. Okay. And the Wii Remote controller we've heard       |
| 11 | quite a bit about has an accelerometer in it,            |
| 12 | correct?   |
| 13 | A. Correct.  |
| 14 | Q. And that accelerometer in the Wii Remote provides     |
| 15 | three separate signals representing acceleration along   |
| 16 | three different axes; isn't that right?                  |
| 17 | A. Correct.  |
| 18 | Q. And you would agree with me, wouldn't you, that the   |
| 19 | use of those three outputs is up to the game designer?   |
| 20 | A. Yes.  |
| 21 | Q. So, just so we understand what that means, although   |
| 22 | Nintendo has the popular games that we've seen, do other |
| 23 | people write games for the Nintendo console?             |
| 24 | A. Yes.  |
| 25 | Q. And I guess Nintendo licenses them to be able to do   |
|    |  |

|    | 103   |
|----|---|
| 1  | that?   |
| 2  | A. Yes.   |
| 3  | Q. So, if someone wanted to start a company and came    |
| 4  | to Nintendo and made their proposal and agreed to pay a |
| 5  | licensing fee to Nintendo, that person could start      |
| 6  | designing their own games for the Wii, for example,     |
| 7  | true?   |
| 8  | A. I'm not that familiar with the business              |
| 9  | relationship side of how we agree on those license      |
| 10 | agreements, but we do license other companies to write  |
| 11 | software for our machines.                              |
| 12 | Q. Okay. But you do know, don't you, that if a          |
| 13 | company like that decides that they want to write       |
| 14 | software to make a Wii-compatible game, they can decide |
| 15 | how to use the outputs of the controller in their game? |
| 16 | A. Yes. As I testified, that's the you know, why        |
| 17 | they have evolved. Right.                               |
| 18 | Q. Okay. Thank you, Mr. Pederson.                       |
| 19 | MR. CAWLEY: That's all the questions I have,            |
| 20 | your Honor.   |
| 21 | REDIRECT EXAMINATION OF JOHN PEDERSON                   |
| 22 | BY MR. GUNTHER:   |
| 23 | Q. Mr. Pederson, I just want to ask you about one       |
| 24 | thing; and that's the vibration motor that Mr. Cawley   |
| 25 | asked you some questions about.                         |
|    |   |

Uh-huh. 1 Α. 2 I just want to make sure I'm clear on this. Q. Do you 3 know, sir -- because you testified you haven't taken one apart. 4 Right. 5 Α. Do you know whether or not the offset weight is 6 Q. connected to the shaft? Do you know that? 7 8 I don't, because I haven't had one apart. Α. 9 MR. GUNTHER: No further questions, your 10 Honor. 11 THE COURT: Do you have anything? 12 MR. CAWLEY: No, your Honor. I'm sorry. Okay. You may step down, sir. 13 THE COURT: Does anybody object to this witness being 14 15 excused? In the meantime, start calling your next witness. 16 17 MR. GUNTHER: Not for Nintendo, your Honor. 18 MR. CAWLEY: No objection, your Honor. 19 THE COURT: All right. Then, sir, you are 20 excused, which means you can leave or not leave as you 21 wish. But don't discuss the testimony in this case or 22 your -- your testimony with anybody except the lawyers until the trial is over. Once the trial is over, you 23 can talk to anybody you want. And like I say, you can 24 25 stay if you wish; or you're free to leave. Thank you,

Jury Trial, Volume 4

1032 1 sir. 2 THE WITNESS: Thank you. THE COURT: Who's next? 3 MR. PRESTA: Your Honor, Nintendo calls 4 5 Mr. Robert Dezmelyk. THE COURT: Step forward, sir. 6 7 MR. PRESTA: And before I start, I'd like to request the court if I could do an interim statement. 8 9 THE COURT: Sure. MR. PRESTA: And also hand out some 10 11 notebooks. THE COURT: 12 Sure. 13 (The oath is administered.) May it please the court? 14 MR. PRESTA: 15 Ladies and gentlemen, the next witness is Mr. Robert Dezmelyk. He is an expert. He'll tell you 16 about his qualifications. He's an expert in the field 17 of controller design and manufacturing, and I'll let him 18 19 explain his qualifications to you. I'm going to be calling him for several 20 different reasons. There's numerous issues in the case. 21 22 One of the very important issues in the case involves 23 whether the claims that were filed in 2002, after Mr. Armstrong learned about the GameCube controller that 24 25 Nintendo had -- whether those games are supported by a

| -  |  |
|----|--|
| 1  | disclosure of that the features that were later          |
| 2  | claimed, whether that 1996 application actually          |
| 3  | discloses the features that were later claimed by        |
| 4  | Mr. Armstrong in 2002. It's a very important issue in    |
| 5  | this case that you're going to be asked to decide.       |
| 6  | Now, one important thing that Mr. Dezmelyk is            |
| 7  | going to do is he's going to walk through the 1996       |
| 8  | application to try to explain, as best he can, to you,   |
| 9  | the jury, what is disclosed in that application and what |
| 10 | is not disclosed in that application and particularly    |
| 11 | relative to the controller the GameCube controller       |
| 12 | that the testimony has shown that Mr. Armstrong had in   |
| 13 | his possession when he wrote the claims in 2002.         |
| 14 | So, that's one of the important issues that              |
| 15 | we're going to try to address with Mr. Dezmelyk because, |
| 16 | as you heard, that issue is important because, as        |
| 17 | Mr. Armstrong explained on the stand, if he can't claim  |
| 18 | that he had that invention back in 1996, then he has     |
| 19 | some problems with invalidity because there's other      |
| 20 | controllers out in the market that you're going to hear  |
| 21 | about in later testimony that would invalidate those     |
| 22 | claims based on Mr. Armstrong's own testimony.           |
| 23 | So, that is the reason that you're going                 |
| 24 | to be asked to see if that 1996 application actually     |
| 25 | discloses what he later claimed in 2002. Very important  |

1 issue in the case, and we hope that Mr. Dezmelyk is
2 going to help walk through that application for you.
3 That application is also in your jury notebook. So,
4 when we start going through it today, hopefully you can
5 reference it in your jury notebook and take a look at it
6 yourselves.

7 Also, Mr. Dezmelyk is going to explain that in the -- he's going to give testimony related to the 8 9 2000 application that Mr. Armstrong filed because 10 there's also an issue in this case that involves whether 11 the application that he filed in 2000 -- whether even -even whether that application has support in it for the 12 claims that he wrote in 2002 after getting his hands on 13 Nintendo's product. 14

So, for better or worse, there's two jobs that you're going to be asked to do with respect to that. It's comparing the claims back to the 1996 application and also comparing the claims back to the 2000 filing of the second application. And our goal with Mr. Dezmelyk is to help you better understand those issues.

Now, the second issue involves what is called "written description support"; and you're going to be asked to find out if the patent has what's called an "adequate written description." Judge Clark is going to

|    | 1035   |
|----|--|
| 1  | explain to you what the law on that is. And if that      |
| 2  | 2000 application that he filed doesn't have support in   |
| 3  | it for the claims that he wrote in 2002, then, as you'll |
| 4  | be instructed by the judge at the close of the case, the |
| 5  | claims will be invalid for lack of written description.  |
| 6  | Because it's important, if you're going to claim         |
| 7  | something later, that you actually disclosed it in the   |
| 8  | application; and Mr. Dezmelyk is going to help us with   |
| 9  | that.  |
| 10 | Now, unfortunately, it doesn't really stop               |
| 11 | there because there are other issues. That involves the  |
| 12 | issues of whether there is support and how far back      |
| 13 | Mr. Armstrong's inventions can go.                       |
| 14 | Beyond that, there is the issue of whether               |
| 15 | once we figure out what date he's entitled to is he      |
| 16 | entitled to 1996, is he entitled to 2000, or is he not   |
| 17 | entitled to any date because when he wrote the claims he |
| 18 | had no application to support it. Once we determine      |
| 19 | that date, it will be our position in the case           |
| 20 | Mr. Dezmelyk will explain that there will be prior art,  |
| 21 | prior controllers out with the same features that he     |
| 22 | later claimed. And you'll hear actually from Sony later  |
| 23 | confirming that by deposition in a short video.          |
| 24 | You'll also hear Mr. Dezmelyk explain that,              |
| 25 | explaining that, in fact, if he's not entitled to go     |
|    |  |

| back to 1996, the reason Mr. Armstrong explained that   |
|---|
| his patent would be invalidated is because there were   |
| other products on the market that had the identical   |
| features. So, he needs to get back in time in order to  |
| say he was before these products. So, that is another   |
| issue that we are going to explain, that if, in fact, he  |
| isn't entitled to the 1996 date, Mr. Dezmelyk is going  |
| to explain that there is prior art prior controllers  |
| with the same features that he later claimed that were  |
| before him and, therefore, would invalidate his patent.   |
| So, invalidity is another is the third  |
| issue that Mr. Dezmelyk is going to address. I doubt  |
| we'll be able to get to them all today, but I'm going to  |
| just give you the overall outline.  |
| The last thing which is equally as  |
| The fast thing, which is equally as   |
| important, because invalidity is one part of the case,  |
| important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important   |
| <pre>important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br/>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br/>question. But also an important question is whether the</pre>   |
| <pre>important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br/>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br/>question. But also an important question is whether the<br/>patent is infringed. Validity is not really as</pre>  |
| <pre>important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br/>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br/>question. But also an important question is whether the<br/>patent is infringed. Validity is not really as<br/>important to Nintendo if there is no infringement. So,</pre>   |
| <pre>important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br/>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br/>question. But also an important question is whether the<br/>patent is infringed. Validity is not really as<br/>important to Nintendo if there is no infringement. So,<br/>they are equally important because either one provides a</pre>  |
| important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br>question. But also an important question is whether the<br>patent is infringed. Validity is not really as<br>important to Nintendo if there is no infringement. So,<br>they are equally important because either one provides a<br>defense to Nintendo.  |
| <pre>important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br/>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br/>question. But also an important question is whether the<br/>patent is infringed. Validity is not really as<br/>important to Nintendo if there is no infringement. So,<br/>they are equally important because either one provides a<br/>defense to Nintendo.<br/>So, you heard Professor Howe go through and</pre>   |
| <pre>important, because invalidity is one part of the case,<br/>whether the patent is valid. And that is an important<br/>question. But also an important question is whether the<br/>patent is infringed. Validity is not really as<br/>important to Nintendo if there is no infringement. So,<br/>they are equally important because either one provides a<br/>defense to Nintendo.<br/>So, you heard Professor Howe go through and<br/>say that there was infringement. Now, of course, it's</pre> |
|   |

1036

Γ

|    | 1037   |
|----|--|
| 1  | there is no infringement. And that is going to be the    |
| 2  | fourth topic that Mr. Dezmelyk is going to address. And  |
| 3  | he will explain why for each one of the accused          |
| 4  | products, which is each one of the accused claims, why   |
| 5  | the claims don't actually cover the product and          |
| 6  | particularly obviously which is the most important       |
| 7  | product in this case, is the Wii. He's going to explain  |
| 8  | why the claims that were copied from the GameCube don't  |
| 9  | cover the Wii. Mr. Dezmelyk will explain that.           |
| 10 | So, I appreciate the opportunity to speak                |
| 11 | directly to you with this interim statement; and we will |
| 12 | begin his testimony.                                     |
| 13 | DIRECT EXAMINATION OF ROBERT DEZMELYK                    |
| 14 | CALLED ON BEHALF OF THE DEFENDANT                        |
| 15 | BY MR. PRESTA:   |
| 16 | Q. Now, Mr. Dezmelyk, would you please introduce         |
| 17 | yourself to the jury?                                    |
| 18 | A. Certainly. Good afternoon. My name is Robert          |
| 19 | Dezmelyk. I was born in 1956; so, I'm 52 years old. I    |
| 20 | live in Newton, New Hampshire, a small town near the     |
| 21 | coast of New Hampshire, a long way from here. I'm happy  |
| 22 | to be here where it's warmer because we're just getting  |
| 23 | spring.  |
| 24 | I've been married for 17 years. I have a son             |
| 25 | who is 13, a daughter who is 9; and I miss them. But     |
|    |  |

1038 that's just a general introduction of me. 1 2 Q. Thank you. And where do you work? 3 I have a company called "LCS/Telegraphics." I 4 Α. 5 started in business as soon as I got out of college; and I do engineering design work, development, software, 6 hardware design, and occasionally this type of 7 consulting. 8 9 0. Now, what sort of educational background do Okay. 10 you have? 11 Α. Well, when I graduated high school, I was already pretty interested in engineering and technology. 12 My father was an engineer. And I went to Massachusetts 13 Institute of Technology in Cambridge, Massachusetts; and 14 15 I studied a special program that was a combination of mechanical engineering and electrical engineering that 16 focused on what are known as "control systems and 17 instrumentation." 18 19 Q. Can you elaborate a little bit on what you mean by "control systems"? 20 Sure. A control system is an electronic or 21 A. 22 mechanical -- usually electronic combined with a 23 mechanical system that controls something to keep it where you want it. A very simple control system is the 24 25 thermostat in your house. If it's working properly, the

1 temperature stays the same; and the thermostat senses if 2 it's too hot or too cold and adjusts the heat 3 accordingly.

More complicated control systems help do
things like, you know, keep an airplane level when it's
flying on its auto pilot or perhaps control a robot arm
so it moves where you want it to. That's what control
systems do.

9 Q. And what is your position with LCS/Telegraphics?
10 A. Well, I'm the president; but it's a very small
11 company. So, at this point I'm the president and
12 everything else.

Earlier in the history of the company, I had a number of employees and I was the president then and I also, of course, led the engineering team.

16 Q. Can you tell me some of the work that you've done17 over the years with LCS/Telegraphics?

18 Sure. When I first started the company, we did a Α. 19 lot of different kinds of engineering products. One of the first things we did was develop some image analyzers 20 for the scientific community. We've also developed a 21 22 number of game-related products. In the early 1980s, 23 our company -- and I was the lead engineer -- developed an arcade game known as "Eon and the Time Traveller." 24 25 And it was an early example of an interactive video disk

Γ

|    | 1040  |
|----|---|
| 1  | game. It played video. You could navigate through it    |
| 2  | and play in kind of a real-time environment.            |
| 3  | After that, the company got and I got more              |
| 4  | and more interested in input devices. We took a little  |
| 5  | detour in the software in the early Eighties, mid       |
| 6  | Eighties, and wrote some software programs for the PC.  |
| 7  | Q. Could you tell me a little bit what you mean by      |
| 8  | "input devices"?  |
| 9  | A. Sure. Sure. Input devices are the things we use      |
| 10 | to communicate with computers or other devices. So, a   |
| 11 | keyboard is an input device. A mouse is an input        |
| 12 | device. A game controller is an input device.           |
| 13 | Q. I'm sorry. I cut you off. If you could continue      |
| 14 | with the type of work you were doing.                   |
| 15 | A. Sure. We started at one point in the 1980s working   |
| 16 | on the software that interacted with mice. And over the |
| 17 | years we developed a number of drivers and software     |
| 18 | products that were licensed to people who manufactured  |
| 19 | mice. They were used by the millions with mice and      |
| 20 | personal computers.                                     |
| 21 | In the mid 1990s we worked extensively on the           |
| 22 | touchpads that are located on notebook computers. If    |
| 23 | you're familiar with a notebook computer today, there's |
| 24 | almost always a little flat pad in the front that you   |
| 25 | can touch with your finger.                             |
|    |   |

Γ

|    | 1041  |
|----|---|
| 1  | In the middle of the 1990s, our company wrote           |
| 2  | essentially all of the software drivers for all of the  |
| 3  | touchpads that were being used, for companies like Sony |
| 4  | or Compaq down here in Texas I used to spend a lot of   |
| 5  | time in Texas and Dell and other companies like that.   |
| 6  | After that, I did much more work on                     |
| 7  | interfaces and, in particular, USB. I                   |
| 8  | Q. Okay. Let me stop you right there.                   |
| 9  | A. Sure.  |
| 10 | Q. For those of us who may not be familiar, what is     |
| 11 | "USB"?  |
| 12 | A. USB is universal serial bus. It's that               |
| 13 | interconnection we have on our PCs. It's a little       |
| 14 | square connector. If you've plugged a mouse into a PC   |
| 15 | these days or the little we call them "thumbsticks"     |
| 16 | sometimes, those little memory sticks, or a camera or   |
| 17 | things. That connector is a universal serial bus, or    |
| 18 | USB.  |
| 19 | I led the standards effort for the human                |
| 20 | input device, part of that standard which covers the    |
| 21 | mice and keyboards, touchscreens, joysticks, and things |
| 22 | like that.  |
| 23 | Q. Okay. Thank you.                                     |
| 24 | Now, have you had any interest in game                  |
| 25 | controllers over the years?                             |

|    | 1042   |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Yes, I have.  |
| 2  | Q. Could you tell us a little bit about that?            |
| 3  | A. Well, sure. In the arcade game I designed, of         |
| 4  | course, it had controllers; and we experimented with     |
| 5  | several different configurations two joysticks, one      |
| 6  | joysticks, joysticks and buttons. An arcade game is      |
| 7  | kind of unique because they have to be rugged. So, you   |
| 8  | have some limitations on the type of controllers you can |
| 9  | use.   |
| 10 | I've also designed a number of other input               |
| 11 | devices that had been useful in that environment. I      |
| 12 | actually wrote the drivers for the Cyberman, a Logitech  |
| 13 | input device that was a multidegree-of-freedom device.   |
| 14 | I worked on the handheld tilt sensor that                |
| 15 | was you could tilt your hand to control the cursor on    |
| 16 | the screen. And a variety of other input devices.        |
| 17 | Q. Do you have do you have any sort of collection        |
| 18 | of controllers?  |
| 19 | A. Yeah. I'm a pack rat. My wife may not be very         |
| 20 | happy about that, but we live out in the countryside and |
| 21 | there is a barn out behind our house and in it are       |
| 22 | hundreds, maybe close to a thousand input devices. Over  |
| 23 | the years I've gathered up and collected various samples |
| 24 | of mice and joysticks and game controllers and so forth; |
| 25 | and they're piled up in boxes in the barn and also in    |

Γ

|    | 1043   |
|----|--|
| 1  | the basement and I have a pretty strict injunction that  |
| 2  | they are not allowed to come upstairs.                   |
| 3  | Q. And why do you have those?                            |
| 4  | A. Well, I'm interested in them, first off; and I        |
| 5  | started along the way collecting them. But it's also a   |
| 6  | way of understanding what people did over time. Many of  |
| 7  | these I worked on. Some of them were prototypes that we  |
| 8  | got in the process of building things. In other cases,   |
| 9  | I bought them in stores because I liked them. They were  |
| 10 | interesting. But it gives me a way of looking back over  |
| 11 | the history of what people have done in that technology. |
| 12 | Q. Thank you.  |
| 13 | Now, have you had a chance to look at the                |
| 14 | 1996 patent application that was filed by Mr. Armstrong? |
| 15 | A. Yes, I have.  |
| 16 | Q. Okay. And in your notebook I gave you a copy of       |
| 17 | that application. It's Defendant's Exhibit 306. And      |
| 18 | the jury also has a copy of this application in their    |
| 19 | notebook.  |
| 20 | Now, I would like to ask you some questions,             |
| 21 | Mr. Dezmelyk, about what is disclosed in that 1996       |
| 22 | application. Okay?                                       |
| 23 | A. Certainly.  |
| 24 | Q. And you have had a chance to review that              |
| 25 | application in detail?                                   |
|    |  |

1044 Yes, I have. 1 Α. 2 Q. Now, before I start --Okay. 3 MR. PRESTA: Could I pull up Slide 17, 4 pl ease? 5 Excuse me, your Honor. Just getting set up 6 here. 7 Slide 17, please. BY MR. PRESTA: 8 9 Now, we've had some timelines in this case, 0. 10 Mr. Dezmelyk. Did you help create some graphics to help 11 the jury sort of understand this issue of the 1996 application? 12 13 Yes, I did. Α. And can you tell me what is now being shown 14 Q. Okav. 15 on the screen? Well, this is just one of the pages from that 16 Α. application. 17 Now, it indicates that that application was filed 18 Q. 19 in 1996. And have you heard that application referred to in court here as the "warehouse application"? 20 A 21 Yes, I have. 22 Q. And do you have an understanding of why that Okay. 23 warehouse application is important to this case? Yes, I do. 24 Α. 25 And why is that? Q.

|    | 1045   |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Well, this is the application that Mr. Armstrong is |
| 2  | trying to claim the priority date of.                  |
| 3  | Q. Okay. And I'm also going to add some other things   |
| 4  | to the timeline. Do you recognize the July 15th, 2002, |
| 5  | item on the timeline?                                  |
| 6  | A. Yes, I do.  |
| 7  | Q. What is that?                                       |
| 8  | A. That's the date of a set of new claims that were    |
| 9  | submitted to the Patent Office related to this         |
| 10 | application.   |
| 11 | Q. Okay. And you have heard the testimony in this      |
| 12 | case that, in fact, those claims, when Mr. Armstrong   |
| 13 | filed them, he had in his possession the GameCube      |
| 14 | product. Do you understand that?                       |
| 15 | A. That's correct, yes.                                |
| 16 | Q. Okay. And, in fact, could you explain to the jury   |
| 17 | your understanding of how the claims came to be, for   |
| 18 | example, claim 19?                                     |
| 19 | A. Well, my understanding is that that claim was       |
| 20 | derived by Mr. Armstrong observing the GameCube        |
| 21 | controller and then drafting the claim to cover that   |
| 22 | controller.  |
| 23 | Q. Okay. So, is it your understanding, then, that      |
| 24 | there are claims in that 2002 filing that are very     |
| 25 | similar to the GameCube product?                       |
|    |  |

|    | 1046  |
|----|---|
| 1  | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 2  | Q. Okay. Now, there is an issue in the case; and can    |
| 3  | you tell me I put a red arrow back here. What does      |
| 4  | that really mean to you?                                |
| 5  | A. Well, that means that there's I guess the word       |
| 6  | would be a "need" in order to sustain the validity of   |
| 7  | that claim, that that claim is entitled to the priority |
| 8  | date or the filing date of the original 1996            |
| 9  | application.  |
| 10 | Q. Okay. And why is that necessary for validity, in     |
| 11 | your opinion?   |
| 12 | A. Well, that's necessary because there is intervening  |
| 13 | prior art. In other words, between 1996 and the later   |
| 14 | date, there is the filing date of the '700 application; |
| 15 | there is other prior art that would invalidate that     |
| 16 | claim.  |
| 17 | Q. Okay. Now, did you undertake do you have an          |
| 18 | opinion as to whether or not those claims filed in 2002 |
| 19 | that are being asserted in this case against Nintendo   |
| 20 | whether they are entitled to go back to 1996?           |
| 21 | A. I believe they are not entitled to the earlier       |
| 22 | date.   |
| 23 | Q. And why is that?                                     |
| 24 | A. Well, they contain new material.                     |
| 25 | Q. They contain what? I'm sorry?                        |
|    |   |

1047 New material that was not present in the 1 Α. 2 original 3 MR. CAWLEY: Objection, your Honor. That's a misstatement of a legal principle that the court has 4 pointed out repeatedly. 5 MR. PRESTA: Perhaps I didn't under --6 THE COURT: 7 Why don't you rephrase the question? 8 9 MR. PRESTA: Okay. I forget exactly what the question was now, your Honor. 10 11 BY MR. PRESTA: But I think my point was whether you had an opinion 12 Q. as to whether the claims that were filed in 2002 -- that 13 claimed invention that was submitted in 2002 is found 14 15 back in the 1996 application. I believe it is not. 16 Α. You believe it's not. 17 0. And why do you believe it's not? 18 19 Α. Because the claim scope that's present is not disclosed in the written description in either of the 20 earlier applications. 21 Now, you say "either of the earlier." Are you 22 Q. 23 talking about the 1996 filing? 24 Α. Right. 25 As well as the 2000 filing? Q.
|    | 1048   |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Right.  |
| 2  | Q. Okay. Now, let me I'm going to ask if we could        |
| 3  | please pull up Defendant's Exhibit 306.                  |
| 4  | BY MR. PRESTA:   |
| 5  | Q. Now, do you recognize that?                           |
| 6  | A. Yes, I do.  |
| 7  | Q. Okay. And you'll agree with me that it's the          |
| 8  | application that Mr. Armstrong filed in 1996 that's      |
| 9  | known as the "warehouse application" here, right?        |
| 10 | A. Yes. This is the front first page.                    |
| 11 | Q. Okay. Now, I'm going to ask you to turn to the        |
| 12 | figures in the application that begin on page mine       |
| 13 | 306.57, meaning it's Exhibit 306, page 57.               |
| 14 | A. Okay.   |
| 15 | Q. And do you see that on the screen?                    |
| 16 | A. Yes, I do.  |
| 17 | Q. Okay. Now, this is from do you understand that        |
| 18 | this is from the prosecution history, the records of the |
| 19 | Patent Office, that it's a copy of the application that  |
| 20 | was filed?   |
| 21 | A. Yes, I understand that.                               |
| 22 | Q. Okay. Now, I see that there is a patent number on     |
| 23 | the side, 6,222,525. Do you know what that patent is?    |
| 24 | A. That would be the '525 patent.                        |
| 25 | Q. That actually issued from this application.           |
|    |  |

|    | 1049  |
|----|---|
| 1  | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 2  | Q. Okay. But we're looking at the application itself    |
| 3  | right now.  |
| 4  | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 5  | Q. Okay.  |
| 6  | MR. PRESTA: Now, the '525 patent, just for              |
| 7  | the record, is Defendant's Exhibit 15.                  |
| 8  | BY MR. PRESTA:  |
| 9  | Q. Now, I wanted to ask you if you could take a look    |
| 10 | at Figure 1.  |
| 11 | Now, first of all, is it your understanding             |
| 12 | that the claims at issue in this case all describe a    |
| 13 | controller that has two joysticks and a cross-switch?   |
| 14 | A. Yes. That's the the claim scope that's been          |
| 15 | asserted. In other words, all of the devices that have  |
| 16 | been accused, certainly have that characteristic.       |
| 17 | Q. Okay. Now all of the GameCube devices, right?        |
| 18 | A. All of the GameCube devices. That's right.           |
| 19 | Q. Okay. So, is it your understanding, then, that you   |
| 20 | need to go back to the 1996 application and see if you  |
| 21 | can find in that application a description of that type |
| 22 | of a device with the two joysticks and a cross-switch?  |
| 23 | A. Right. It's necessary, in order for the patent to    |
| 24 | have an adequate written description, that we can take  |
| 25 | the claim, the elements of the claim, and find them     |

Γ

|    | 1050  |
|----|---|
| 1  | expressed, in some way, in a way that we can identify   |
| 2  | that the inventor had that idea back in the original    |
| 3  | specification.  |
| 4  | Q. Okay. And I want to do that starting with the        |
| 5  | figures. And I'd like for you to go through the         |
| 6  | figures in fact, we're on Figure 1 of the application   |
| 7  | that was filed in 1996. And can you tell me what that   |
| 8  | figure is showing?                                      |
| 9  | A. Yes. This is a top view a drawing first, if          |
| 10 | I might, the drawings in patents are kind of like a     |
| 11 | formal draftsman's drawing. They're always in black and |
| 12 | white, and they're usually shown in different           |
| 13 | directions.   |
| 14 | We're looking down on the top here of a                 |
| 15 | device; and it's showing a ball, which is a circle in   |
| 16 | the center. And you'll note there's two items. One is   |
| 17 | numbered 128; one is numbered 126. Those are a couple   |
| 18 | of rotary encoders that detect the ball turning. This   |
| 19 | is actually showing a trackball that is then mounted on |
| 20 | some platforms and so forth.                            |
| 21 | Q. Okay. Does this figure show the combination of       |
| 22 | elements that are present in the claims that are        |
| 23 | asserted against Nintendo in this case?                 |
| 24 | A. No, it is not.                                       |
| 25 | Q. Okay. What is it missing?                            |

Well, it does not include or disclose a vibration 1 Α. 2 motor. There is no motor shown in this drawing. 3 There is also no joystick shown, and there's not what we've been calling a "D-pad" or what I may call 4 5 the "hat switch" occasionally. 6 Q. Okay. 7 Α. None of those are present. 8 Now, in turning to Figure 2, do you 0. Okay. 9 recognize that figure? And could you tell the jury what it is and if it relates back to Figure 1? 10 As we go 11 through this, I would like it if you could just try to explain to the jury what these figures are; and maybe if 12 they relate to each other, you could indicate that. 13 Let me try to explain this one. 14 Sure. Α. This is a 15 little more complicated drawing. This one is looking at 16 the side of the same thing we were looking at on the And if I can just use a laser pointer a bit here. 17 top. The ball is in the middle (indicating). 18 That's a 19 trackball. It's going to rotate. The person's hand is 20 going to come down from above and rotate that ball. The little detectors (indicating) that detect 21 22 the rotation of these parts here, we saw them in the last figure. 23 The framework we saw from above is this 24 25 structure around here (indicating).

1052 And there is also a small -- what's called a 1 "collet" or a "collar," because it goes around the ball 2 3 (indicating), which can be turned or twisted by the hand. 4 5 So, this is describing an input device that's got a trackball in the middle and you can push this 6 trackball back and forth and side to side or you can 7 8 push it up and down a little bit and it will detect with 9 these little switches here (indicating) whether it's being lifted up, pushed down, or slid to one of the 10 11 sides. Does that figure describe the features that 12 Q. Okay. you see on the GameCube controller that's in this case? 13 There's obviously no joystick. 14 No. There's no Α. 15 buttons. There's no vibration motor. And there's no D-switch. 16 All right. Now, when you say "D-switch," you 17 0. mean -- I referred to it as a "cross-switch." 18 19 Α. Cross-switch. I'll use the word "cross-switch." 20 0. Okay. 21 MR. PRESTA: Can we turn to the next figure, 22 3? 23 BY MR. PRESTA: 24 Now, if you think they are the same figure from a Q. 25 different angle, please explain that to the jury. 

## Jury Trial, Volume 4

|    | 1053   |
|----|--|
| 1  | don't want to belabor that for the jury, but it is       |
| 2  | important that we walk through all the figures.          |
| 3  | A. Sure. This is claim 3 again, another view of the      |
| 4  | same device. We're seeing it from another angle the      |
| 5  | ball in the middle, of course; the sensors for the       |
| 6  | rotation of the ball; and the sensing means and the      |
| 7  | supports for the motion in X, Y, and Z.                  |
| 8  | Q. Okay. Again, are there two joysticks and a            |
| 9  | cross-switch in that?                                    |
| 10 | A. No.   |
| 11 | Q. Okay.   |
| 12 | MR. PRESTA: Could we take a look at                      |
| 13 | Figure 4, please?  |
| 14 | BY MR. PRESTA:   |
| 15 | Q. Again, can you just give me                           |
| 16 | THE COURT: Counsel I need counsel to step                |
| 17 | sidebar for a minute, please.                            |
| 18 | (The following proceedings were conducted at             |
| 19 | sidebar with both parties represented.)                  |
| 20 | THE COURT: I'm not sure why we are comparing             |
| 21 | the accused product to the specification of 1996; but if |
| 22 | this goes on, I'm going to have to give a very strict    |
| 23 | instruction to the jury that that's all nonsense. And,   |
| 24 | of course, you're killing yourself on JMOL               |
| 25 | MR. PRESTA: I understand.                                |

ſ

|    | 1054   |
|----|--|
| 1  | THE COURT: or anything with the Fed                      |
| 2  | Circuit because that's not relevant to anything. It's    |
| 3  | the claim to the specification, the claim to the accused |
| 4  | product. But I've never unless you've got some case      |
| 5  | out there that says you can do accused product versus    |
| 6  | old specification.                                       |
| 7  | MR. PRESTA: I understand. Okay. Let me                   |
| 8  | just tell you what I was thinking, your Honor.           |
| 9  | THE COURT: I mean, we've got days to go                  |
| 10 | here. You can use your time any way you want, but at     |
| 11 | some point l've got                                      |
| 12 | MR. CAWLEY: There's 50 drawings, your Honor.             |
| 13 | MR. PRESTA: Well, there's only four                      |
| 14 | embodiments.   |
| 15 | THE COURT: You can do what you want, but I'm             |
| 16 | just explaining to you that what I'm starting to think   |
| 17 | about here is I'm going to have to explain to the jury   |
| 18 | that that's not what they're doing at all. And I don't   |
| 19 | like interrupting lawyers and telling them I mean,       |
| 20 | the instruction makes it sound like you're wrong.        |
| 21 | MR. PRESTA: I understand.                                |
| 22 | THE COURT: Which, in my opinion, you're                  |
| 23 | MR. PRESTA: Well, let me just explain for a              |
| 24 | moment, if I could, what I was intending to do. The      |
| 25 | fact that they read it onto the GameCube                 |
|    |  |

Christina L. Bickham, RMR, CRR 409/654-2891

|    | 1055   |
|----|--|
| 1  | THE COURT: You've got a good lawyer's voice;           |
| 2  | so, keep it down.                                      |
| 3  | MR. PRESTA: Okay. I was trying to                      |
| 4  | because they read the claim onto the GameCube, that    |
| 5  | defines the scope of the claim; and our position would |
| 6  | be I could, of course, change it if your Honor thinks  |
| 7  | it is inappropriate is that that defines the scope of  |
| 8  | the claim and we need to find that level of scope of   |
| 9  | protection in that application.                        |
| 10 | It can be done in a different way. I thought           |
| 11 | it would be easier for the jury to do it in this way;  |
| 12 | but I can do it with the claim language, read it onto  |
| 13 | the device. But visually it's a complicated task and I |
| 14 | thought this might make it easier, but                 |
| 15 | THE COURT: Okay. I'mjust                               |
| 16 | MR. PRESTA: I don't want to do anything that           |
| 17 | you think is improper.                                 |
| 18 | THE COURT: It's not improper but it just               |
| 19 | gets to the point of irrelevance and I'm just pointing |
| 20 | out to you a problem that I'm seeing with this line.   |
| 21 | That's all.  |
| 22 | MR. PRESTA: I understand. My goal would                |
| 23 | be   |
| 24 | THE COURT: You've got so many hours. Use               |
| 25 | them any way you wish.                                 |

| -  |  |
|----|--|
|    | 1056   |
| 1  | MR. PRESTA: Well, I don't intend to waste              |
| 2  | anybody's time. That's for sure. What I would like to  |
| 3  | do is have the claims read                             |
| 4  | THE REPORTER: I'm sorry?                               |
| 5  | THE COURT: You can do whatever you wish.               |
| 6  | MR. PRESTA: Thank you, your Honor.                     |
| 7  | (Sidebar conference concluded. The following           |
| 8  | proceedings were heard in open court.)                 |
| 9  | THE COURT: Go ahead, counsel.                          |
| 10 | MR. PRESTA: Thank you.                                 |
| 11 | BY MR. PRESTA:   |
| 12 | Q. Mr. Dezmelyk, now, have you undertaken a review of  |
| 13 | the asserted claims in the case?                       |
| 14 | A. Yes, I have.  |
| 15 | Q. Okay. And you're familiar with what claims they     |
| 16 | are, right?  |
| 17 | A. Yes.  |
| 18 | Q. Now, what I'd like to do first is just so the       |
| 19 | jury can understand the procedure that you're going    |
| 20 | through is to pull up claim 19. And that would be in   |
| 21 | the '700 patent, which is Defendant's Exhibit 1, which |
| 22 | is also in the jury notebook, at column 37, which is   |
| 23 | page 64.   |
| 24 | MR. PRESTA: Could you pull up claim 19 for             |
| 25 | me, please? Thank you.                                 |

|    | 1057   |
|----|--|
| 1  | BY MR. PRESTA:   |
| 2  | Q. Now, Mr. Dezmelyk, would you please give a look at    |
| 3  | claim 19 and just give the jury an overview of what is   |
| 4  | actually required by the language of claim 19 so we can  |
| 5  | get an understanding of the scope of claim 19?           |
| 6  | A. Well, sure. I think we've looked at this claim        |
| 7  | some before, but let me just kind of run through it      |
| 8  | agai n.  |
| 9  | It starts off we have to have again,                     |
| 10 | just as kind of a primer, we need to find each of the    |
| 11 | limitations, as they're called in the claim. So, the     |
| 12 | first part is "a hand operated controller. The word      |
| 13 | "comprising" means made up of or having these parts, at  |
| 14 | least those parts. And it is "comprising structure       |
| 15 | allowing hand inputs rotating a platform on two mutually |
| 16 | perpendicular axes" so, we need that platform "to        |
| 17 | be translated into electrical outputs by the four        |
| 18 | unidirectional sensors" so, we need the sensors          |
| 19 | and that "to allow controlling objects and navigating a  |
| 20 | viewpoint."  |
| 21 | Q. Let me stop you there. Now, when we were talking a    |
| 22 | minute ago in looking at those figures, do you           |
| 23 | understand that that element has been equated to a       |
| 24 | cross-switch on Nintendo's GameCube product?             |
| 25 | A. Yes.  |

1058 Q. Okay. But you also understand what that claim 1 language itself means, right? 2 3 Α. Right. And in simple terms, what does it mean? 4 0. Okay. 5 Α. Well, there has to be a physical structure or object that is a platform. It can be rotated on two 6 mutually perpendicular axes. 7 Q. Okay. 8 So, we could just, for instance, go look for that 9 Α. element. 10 11 Q. Okay. Now, could you go down to the paragraph that says "a second element"? 12 13 Α. Okay. And could you explain to the jury what that element 14 Q. 15 is? 16 Α. Well, again, it says: A second element movable on two mutually perpendicular axes. So, we need something, 17 a physical thing, that is movable on two mutually 18 19 perpendicular axes. That really just means the axes 20 cross; that is, like the axes in a graph or two lines that come together or two roads crossing. That's the 21 22 perpendicular part. 23 Okay. Q. Now, is it your understanding -- as to what element on the GameCube controller has Anascape 24 25 written -- read that claim element onto?

|    | 1059   |
|----|--|
| 1  | A. Well, in the infringement argument or contentions,    |
| 2  | it's the joystick. So, a joystick is held up as an       |
| 3  | example of that. So, that means our claim scope has to   |
| 4  | at least have that as an example; that is, something     |
| 5  | like a joystick or a joystick.                           |
| 6  | Q. Okay. Now, could you also talk about the third        |
| 7  | element? And it looks like the language is similar.      |
| 8  | So, if you   |
| 9  | A. It's the same. So, we need to now find a second       |
| 10 | one, in essence, that's the same as the or at least      |
| 11 | meets that requirement of having being movable on two    |
| 12 | mutually perpendicular axes and being structured to      |
| 13 | activate two bi-directional proportional sensors.        |
| 14 | Q. Okay. And the last two elements, if you could         |
| 15 | quickly just advise the jury as to what those are.       |
| 16 | A. Well, buttons. We need to find buttons. "A            |
| 17 | plurality" meaning more than one. And those buttons      |
| 18 | have to have some kind of sensor that tells whether the  |
| 19 | button is on or off.                                     |
| 20 | Q. Okay.   |
| 21 | MR. PRESTA: Now, could I also get now                    |
| 22 | could we go back to the patent itself and take a look at |
| 23 | claim 14, please, which is on Defendant's Exhibit 1,     |
| 24 | page oh. I'm sorry. Claim 16 on page 63, starting        |
| 25 | at the top of column 36.                                 |

Г

|    | 1060   |
|----|--|
| 1  | BY MR. PRESTA:   |
| 2  | Q. Now, Mr. Dezmelyk, could you just again quickly try |
| 3  | to give the jury an understanding of what this claim   |
| 4  | is what is being claimed by this language that is      |
| 5  | contained in claim 16?                                 |
| 6  | A. Well, the claim here describes a 3-D graphics       |
| 7  | controller that is, a controller with some             |
| 8  | properties that's for controlling a television-based   |
| 9  | game. And then "comprising" means the parts it's made  |
| 10 | up of. So, those parts are the important parts that    |
| 11 | we're going to be looking for.                         |
| 12 | A first element again, it's very similar               |
| 13 | here to the one we just talked about in 19 structured  |
| 14 | to activate four unidirectional sensors, those sensors |
| 15 | useful to control the game.                            |
| 16 | Q. And what feature is alleged to correspond to that   |
| 17 | in the GameCube product?                               |
| 18 | A. The cross-switch.                                   |
| 19 | Q. Okay. And the second element paragraph?             |
| 20 | A. The first sheet. And that's, as an example, a       |
| 21 | circuit card, a first circuit card.                    |
| 22 | And then a second element, which is similar            |
| 23 | again to what we saw in 19, which is the structure to  |
| 24 | activate a first "two bi-directional proportional      |
| 25 | sensors."  |
|    |  |

Γ

|    | 1061  |
|----|---|
| 1  | And then we have a third element again, which           |
| 2  | is like a joystick, which is mapped onto the joystick.  |
| 3  | Q. Is it your understanding that this claim 16 has      |
| 4  | been asserted or read onto at least the first           |
| 5  | element, second element, and third element onto the     |
| 6  | cross-switch and two joysticks that are on the GameCube |
| 7  | controller?   |
| 8  | A. That's correct.                                      |
| 9  | Q. Okay. Now, I want to take you to an embodiment of    |
| 10 | the patent; and I want to of the 1996 application and   |
| 11 | my question I want to ask you about the disclosure in   |
| 12 | that application relative to the claim scope that we    |
| 13 | have just looked at on claim 16 and claim 19. Okay?     |
| 14 | A. Okay.  |
| 15 | Q. So that we're not comparing the accused product to   |
| 16 | the earlier application, what we need to do is compare  |
| 17 | the claim to see if those features are present in the   |
| 18 | earlier application. All right?                         |
| 19 | And, first of all, I'd like to take you to a            |
| 20 | figure. And did you prepare some type of animation to   |
| 21 | help the jury understand a couple of the figures?       |
| 22 | THE COURT: Actually, being 5:00, maybe it's             |
| 23 | best if we start that fresh on Monday morning.          |
| 24 | MR. PRESTA: Okay.                                       |
| 25 | THE COURT: So, ladies and gentlemen, we're              |
|    |   |

## Jury Trial, Volume 4

1062 going to break at this time. I'm going to ask you to be 1 2 back here on Monday morning at 8:45. We'll be following 3 basically the same schedule. Since this is a three-day weekend, I'll stress again my instructions. Don't let 4 5 anybody talk to you about this. Don't let anybody influence you on it, and don't go out and do any 6 research or talk to any friends about it. We'll start 7 8 again at 8:45 in the morning. Keeping track of the 9 time, we're still right on track. I'm still very confident, absent a hurricane or something like that, 10 11 that the evidence is going to be through on Wednesday; 12 so, we'll be getting the case to you. And then obviously you can take as long as you want as far as 13 14 deciding it. But at this time you are excused for the 15 weekend. I'll ask you to be back at 8:45 on Monday 16 morning. 17 (The jury exits the courtroom, 4:59 p.m.) THE COURT: Anything to be taken up outside 18 the presence of the jury from the plaintiff's point of 19 view before we break? 20 21 MR. CAWLEY: Only, your Honor -- and I'll go 22 out on a little bit of a limb here. But this is 23 Nintendo's last witness. I think that's right. THE COURT: 24 What? 25 MR. PRESTA: Your Honor -- well, we were

talking about calling Fiorito; but I believe that's 1 2 been --3 Well, now, I indicated a problem THE COURT: with certain of his testimony. I'm not -- I mean, I 4 don't want later on someone saying I cut you out of a 5 complete witness. You said you were going to bring it 6 up later if there was some problem. I'm not inviting 7 him, mind you but --8 9 MR. PRESTA: Yeah. Based on our 10 conversation, I wasn't sure where we really ended up on 11 that conversation. THE COURT: Well, I think what I suggested 12 was -- and I thought Mr. Gunther said that you would get 13 back to me if there was -- with what you were planning 14 15 to come up with because I wasn't able to get a real good answer on anything that seemed to be admissible. But on 16 the other hand, you were on the spot; so, if you're 17 going to come up -- the last thing I -- Mr. Gunther said 18 19 was that you would get back to me with what you specifically were bringing him forward for. 20 21 MR. PRESTA: We will do that, your Honor. 22 THE COURT: Okay. 23 MR PRESTA: We will send something to you --Well, then that --24 THE COURT: MR. CAWLEY: Well, in any event, this is 25

Г

|    | 1064   |
|----|--|
| 1  | either their last or next-to-last witness. We might      |
| 2  | have two witnesses on rebuttal; but, of course, they     |
| 3  | would be fairly short. So, I think there is at least a   |
| 4  | reasonable chance we could finish the evidence in this   |
| 5  | case on Monday.  |
| 6  | THE COURT: Oh, the jury will be real happy.              |
| 7  | I don't like telling people I'd rather give them the     |
| 8  | surprise on Monday.                                      |
| 9  | MR. CAWLEY: Sure. I just wanted you, for                 |
| 10 | the court's planning, to know Monday or early Tuesday    |
| 11 | we'll probably be through with the evidence.             |
| 12 | THE COURT: All right. Anything of a                      |
| 13 | substantive matter to be brought up from defendant's     |
| 14 | point of view other than scheduling?                     |
| 15 | MR. GUNTHER: No, your Honor.                             |
| 16 | THE COURT: Okay.   |
| 17 | MR. PRESTA: I have one question.                         |
| 18 | THE COURT: We're off the record, then.                   |
| 19 | MR. PRESTA: I have one question, your Honor.             |
| 20 | THE COURT: Okay.   |
| 21 | MR. PRESTA: And it just involved that                    |
| 22 | previous question, where we talked about the changes to  |
| 23 | the 1996 application to the '700. And, your Honor, it    |
| 24 | seems to be indicating you think that the changes may    |
| 25 | actually be irrelevant to issues in the case and may not |

1065 be an appropriate thing to show the jury. 1 2 I had had something prepared for Mr. Fiorito 3 and/or Mr. Dezmelyk on the changes that have been made from the 1996 to the '700 application. I sort of wanted 4 to get a read from your Honor if you felt that that 5 was -- based on your last comment, whether that would be 6 7 appropriate. 8 THE COURT: All right. Why don't we go off the record and that will let Chris start wrapping up. 9 So, we're off the record. 10 11 (Proceedings adjourned, 5:02 p.m.) COURT REPORTER'S CERTIFICATION 12 13 I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT ON THIS DATE, MAY 8, 2008, THE FOREGOING IS A CORRECT TRANSCRIPT FROM THE 14 15 RECORD OF PROCEEDINGS. 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25